



# RAM CHASSIS CAB


2019 USER GUIDE

## IMPORTANT

Get warranty and other information online – you can review and print or download a copy of the Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals and the limited warranties provided by FCA US LLC for your vehicle by visiting [www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com) (U.S.) or [www.owners.mopar.ca](http://www.owners.mopar.ca) (Canada). Click on the applicable link in the "Popular Topics" area of the [www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com) (U.S.) or [www.owners.mopar.ca](http://www.owners.mopar.ca) (Canada) homepage and follow the instructions to select the applicable year, make and model of your vehicle.

If you are the first registered retail owner of your vehicle, you may obtain a complimentary printed copy of the Warranty Booklet by calling **1 866 726-4636** (U.S.) or **1 800 387-1143** (Canada) or by contacting your dealer.

This User Guide is intended to familiarize you with the important features of your vehicle. Your Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals and Warranty Booklet can be found by visiting the website on the back cover of your User Guide. We hope you find these resources useful. U.S. residents can purchase replacement kits by visiting [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com) and Canadian residents can purchase replacement kits by calling **1 800 387-1143**.

 **WARNING:** Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to [www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle](http://www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle) .



Congratulations on selecting your new FCA US LLC vehicle. Be assured that it represents precision workmanship, distinctive styling, and high quality.

ALWAYS drive safely and pay attention to the road. ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the features and applications in this vehicle. Only use the features and applications when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

This guide illustrates and describes the operation of features and equipment that are either standard or optional on this vehicle. This guide may also include a description of features and equipment that are no longer available or were not ordered on this vehicle. Please disregard any features and equipment described in this guide that are not available on this vehicle. FCA US LLC reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications and/or make additions to or improvements to its products without imposing any obligation upon itself to install them on products previously manufactured.

This User Guide has been prepared to help you quickly become acquainted with the important features of your vehicle. It contains most things you will need to operate and maintain the vehicle, including emergency information.

When it comes to service, remember that your authorized dealer knows your vehicle best, has factory-trained technicians and genuine MOPAR® parts, and cares about your satisfaction.

## HOW TO FIND YOUR OWNER'S MANUAL ONLINE

This publication has been prepared as a reference item to help you quickly become acquainted with the most important features and processes of your vehicle. It contains most things you will need to operate and maintain the vehicle, including emergency information and procedures.

**This User Guide is not a replacement for the full Owner's Manual, and does not fully cover every operation and procedure possible with your vehicle.**

For more detailed descriptions of the topics discussed in this User Guide, as well as information covering features and processes not covered in this User Guide, the full vehicle Owner's Manual can be accessed for free online in a printer-friendly PDF format.

**To get the full Owner's Manual or applicable supplement for your vehicle, follow the appropriate web address below:**

[www.mopar.com/en-us/care/owners-manual.html](http://www.mopar.com/en-us/care/owners-manual.html) (U.S. Residents)

[www.owners.mopar.ca](http://www.owners.mopar.ca) (Canadian Residents)

FCA US LLC is committed to protecting our environment and natural resources. By converting from paper to electronic delivery for the majority of the user information for your vehicle, together we greatly reduce the demand for tree-based products and lessen the stress on our environment. ♻️

## HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL

### Essential Information

Each time direction instructions (left/right or forwards/backwards) about the vehicle are given, these must be intended as regarding an occupant in the driver's seat. Special cases not complying with this rule will be properly specified in the text.

The figures in this User Guide are provided by way of example only: this might imply that some details of the image do not correspond to the actual arrangement of your vehicle.

In addition, the User Guide has been conceived considering vehicles with the steering wheel on the left side; it is therefore possible that in vehicles with the steering wheel on the right side, the position or construction of some controls is not exactly mirror-like with respect to the figure.

To identify the chapter with the information needed you can consult the index at the end of this User Guide.

Chapters can be rapidly identified with dedicated graphic tabs, at the side of each odd page. A few pages further there is a key for getting to know the chapter order and the

relevant symbols in the tabs. There is always a textual indication of the current chapter at the side of each even page.

### Symbols

Some vehicle components have colored labels whose symbols indicate precautions to be observed when using this component. Refer to “Warning Lights and Messages” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information on the symbols used in your vehicle.

## WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS

While reading this User Guide you will find a series of WARNINGS to be followed to prevent incorrect use of components which could cause accidents or injuries.

There are also CAUTIONS that must be followed to prevent against procedures that could result in damage to your vehicle.











## VAN CONVERSIONS/ CAMPERS

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not apply to body modifications or special equipment installed by van conversion/camper

manufacturers/body builders. U.S. residents refer to the Warranty Information book, Section 2.1.C. Canadian residents refer to the “What Is Not Covered” section of the Warranty Information book. Such equipment includes video monitors, VCRs, heaters, stoves, refrigerators, etc. For warranty coverage and service on these items, contact the applicable manufacturer.

Operating instructions for the special equipment installed by the conversion/camper manufacturer should also be supplied with your vehicle. If these instructions are missing, please contact your authorized dealer for assistance in obtaining replacement documents from the applicable manufacturer.

For information on the Body Builder's Guide refer to [www.rambodybuilder.com](http://www.rambodybuilder.com). This website contains dimensional and technical specifications for your vehicle. It is intended for Second Stage Manufacturer's technical support. For service issues, contact your authorized dealer.

<b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE</b>	
<b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL</b>	
<b>SAFETY</b>	
<b>STARTING AND OPERATING</b>	
<b>IN CASE OF EMERGENCY</b>	
<b>SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE</b>	
<b>TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
<b>MULTIMEDIA</b>	
<b>CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE</b>	
<b>INDEX</b>	

<b>WELCOME FROM FCA US LLC</b>	
<b>HOW TO FIND YOUR OWNER'S MANUAL ONLINE</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	
<b>HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL</b>	<b>2</b>
Essential Information	2
Symbols	2
<b>WARNINGS AND CAUTIONS</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>VAN CONVERSIONS/CAMPERS</b>	<b>2</b>
<b>GETTING TO KNOW YOUR VEHICLE</b>	
<b>KEYS</b>	<b>11</b>
Key Fob	11
<b>IGNITION SWITCH</b>	<b>12</b>
Keyless Push Button Ignition	12
<b>REMOTE START — IF EQUIPPED</b>	<b>14</b>
How To Use Remote Start	14
To Enter Remote Start Mode	14
General Information	15
<b>VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM</b>	<b>15</b>
To Arm The System	15
To Disarm The System	15

<b>DOORS</b>	<b>16</b>
Keyless Enter-N-Go —	
Passive Entry	16
Child-Protection Door Lock	18
<b>SEATS</b>	<b>19</b>
Driver Memory Seats —	
If Equipped	19
Heated Seats — If Equipped	21
Ventilated Seats — If Equipped	22
<b>HEAD RESTRAINTS</b>	<b>23</b>
Front Head Restraints	23
Rear Head Restraint Adjustment	24
Rear Head Restraint Removal	24
<b>STEERING WHEEL</b>	<b>25</b>
Tilt Steering Column	25
Heated Steering Wheel — If Equipped	25
<b>DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>MIRRORS</b>	<b>27</b>
Power Convex Mirror Switch — If Equipped	27
Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse — If Equipped	27
Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And Trailer Tow — If Equipped	28

<b>EXTERIOR LIGHTS</b>	<b>29</b>
Multifunction Lever	29
Headlight Switch	29
Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped	29
High/Low Beam Switch	30
Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control — If Equipped	30
Flash-To-Pass	30
Automatic Headlights	31
Parking Lights And Panel Lights	31
Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only)	31
Headlight Delay	31
Front Fog Lights — If Equipped	31
Turn Signals	32
Cargo Lights — If Equipped	32
<b>WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS</b>	<b>32</b>
Windshield Wipers	32
Rain Sensing Wipers — If Equipped	33

<b>CLIMATE CONTROLS</b> .....	<b>35</b>
Climate Controls With A Touchscreen Overview .....	35
Climate Control Functions .....	42
Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) .....	42
Operating Tips .....	43
<b>WINDOWS</b> .....	<b>44</b>
Power Windows .....	44
Wind Buffeting .....	45
<b>HOOD</b> .....	<b>46</b>
To Open The Hood .....	46
To Close The Hood.....	46
<b>GARAGE DOOR OPENER —</b>	
<b>IF EQUIPPED</b> .....	<b>47</b>
Before You Begin Programming HomeLink.....	47
Canadian/Gate Operator Programming .....	49
Using HomeLink.....	50
Security.....	50
Troubleshooting Tips.....	50
General Information .....	50
<b>INTERNAL EQUIPMENT.....</b>	<b>51</b>
Electrical Power Outlets .....	51
Power Inverter — If Equipped ...	52
Wireless Charging Pad — If Equipped .....	53

## **GETTING TO KNOW YOUR INSTRUMENT PANEL**

<b>INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY</b> .....	<b>55</b>
Instrument Cluster Display Controls.....	55
Oil Life Reset .....	56
Display Menu Items.....	56
Diesel Messages And Warnings — 6.7L Cummins Diesel Engine ....	57
<b>WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES</b> .....	<b>60</b>
Red Warning Lights .....	60
Yellow Warning Lights.....	63
Yellow Indicator Lights.....	66
Green Indicator Lights .....	68
White Indicator Lights.....	69
Blue Indicator Lights .....	69

## **SAFETY**

<b>AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS</b> .....	<b>70</b>
Forward Collision Warning (FCW) — If Equipped .....	70
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) .....	72

<b>OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS</b> .....	<b>80</b>
Occupant Restraint Systems Features .....	80
Important Safety Precautions ....	80
Seat Belt Systems .....	81
Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS).....	90
Child Restraints .....	100
Transporting Pets .....	118

<b>SAFETY TIPS</b> .....	<b>118</b>
Transporting Passengers .....	118
Exhaust Gas .....	118
Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle .....	119
Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle.....	121

## **STARTING AND OPERATING**

<b>STARTING THE ENGINE</b> .....	<b>122</b>
Normal Starting Using ENGINE START/STOP Button .....	122
<b>STARTING THE ENGINE — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE</b> .....	<b>125</b>
Keyless Enter-N-Go — Ignition	125
Extreme Cold Weather .....	128

<b>NORMAL OPERATION — 6.7L DIESEL</b>		
<b>ENGINE</b> .....	<b>128</b>	
Cold Weather Precautions.....	128	
Engine Idling .....	128	
Noise .....	129	
Stopping The Engine.....	130	
Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF)		
Manual Regeneration - If Equipped		
(Chassis Cab Only).....	130	
<b>ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS —</b>		
<b>GASOLINE ENGINE</b> .....	<b>131</b>	
<b>ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS —</b>		
<b>6.7L DIESEL</b> .....	<b>131</b>	
<b>AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION</b> .....	<b>132</b>	
Ignition Park Interlock.....	133	
Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock		
System .....	133	
Six-Speed Automatic Transmission		
— If Equipped .....	133	
Eight-Speed Automatic		
Transmission — If Equipped ..	135	
<b>FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF</b>		
<b>EQUIPPED</b> .....	<b>137</b>	
Four-Position Electronically Shifted		
Transfer Case — If Equipped ..	138	
Electronically Shifted Transfer Case		
(Four-Position Switch) — If		
Equipped .....	139	
<b>SPEED CONTROL</b> .....	<b>140</b>	
To Activate .....	141	
To Set A Desired Speed .....	141	
To Resume Speed .....	141	
To Deactivate.....	141	
<b>ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) — IF</b>		
<b>EQUIPPED</b> .....	<b>141</b>	
Activating Adaptive Cruise Control		
(ACC) .....	143	
To Set A Desired ACC Speed ...	143	
To Resume .....	144	
To Vary The Speed Setting .....	144	
Setting The Following Distance In		
ACC .....	145	
General Information.....	146	
<b>PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST — IF</b>		
<b>EQUIPPED</b> .....	<b>146</b>	
ParkSense Sensors .....	146	
ParkSense Display.....	147	
Enabling And Disabling		
ParkSense .....	148	
ParkSense System Usage		
Precautions .....	148	
<b>PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK</b>		
<b>ASSIST</b> .....	<b>149</b>	
ParkSense Sensors .....	149	
Enabling And Disabling Front And/Or		
Rear ParkSense.....	150	
<b>PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP</b>		
<b>CAMERA</b> .....	<b>150</b>	
<b>SURROUND VIEW CAMERA SYSTEM — IF</b>		
<b>EQUIPPED</b> .....	<b>153</b>	
<b>REFUELING THE VEHICLE — GAS</b> .....	<b>156</b>	
Materials Added To Fuel .....	156	
<b>REFUELING THE VEHICLE — DIESEL</b>		
<b>CHASSIS CAB MODELS</b> .....	<b>157</b>	
Diesel Exhaust Fluid.....	157	
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Storage...	158	
Adding Diesel Exhaust Fluid...	158	
<b>TRAILER TOWING</b> .....	<b>160</b>	
Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum		
Trailer Weight Ratings) .....	160	
Towing Requirements .....	160	
<b>RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND</b>		
<b>MOTORHOME, ETC.)</b> .....	<b>165</b>	
Towing This Vehicle Behind Another		
Vehicle.....	165	
Recreational Towing — Two-Wheel		
Drive Models.....	165	
Recreational Towing — Four-Wheel		
Drive Models.....	166	
<b>DRIVING TIPS</b> .....	<b>169</b>	
Driving On Slippery Surfaces ..	169	
Driving Through Water .....	169	

## **IN CASE OF EMERGENCY**

<b>HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS</b> .....	171
<b>BULB REPLACEMENT</b> .....	171
Replacement Bulbs .....	171
<b>FUSES</b> .....	173
Power Distribution Center .....	173
<b>JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING</b> .....	181
4500/5500 Models .....	181
Preparations For Jacking .....	181
Jacking Instructions 4500 And 5500 Series.....	182
To Stow The Flat Or Spare — If Equipped .....	184
Hub Caps/Wheel Covers — If Equipped .....	184
<b>JUMP STARTING</b> .....	185
Preparations For Jump Start ....	185
Jump Starting Procedure .....	186
<b>IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS</b> .....	187
<b>GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE</b> —	
<b>6–SPEED TRANSMISSION</b> .....	188
<b>MANUAL PARK RELEASE — 8–SPEED TRANSMISSION</b> .....	189
<b>FREEDING A STUCK VEHICLE</b> .....	190

<b>TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE</b> .....	191
Two-Wheel Drive Models .....	192
Four-Wheel Drive Models.....	192
Emergency Tow Hooks — If Equipped.....	192
<b>ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS)</b> .....	193
<b>EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR).....</b>	193

## **SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE**

<b>SCHEDULED SERVICING — GASOLINE ENGINE</b> .....	194
Maintenance Plan – Gasoline Engine .....	195
Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle.....	198
<b>SCHEDULED SERVICING — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE</b> .....	198
Oil Change Indicator System — Cummins Diesel.....	199
Perform Service Indicator — Cummins Diesel .....	199
Maintenance Plan — Cummins Diesel Engine .....	200

<b>ENGINE COMPARTMENT</b> .....	206
6.4L Engine .....	206
6.7L Diesel Engine — Six-Speed AS69RC HD (3500/Chassis Cab Models).....	207
<b>DEALER SERVICE</b> —	
<b>6.7L DIESEL ENGINE</b> .....	208
Engine Air Cleaner Filter .....	208
Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter .....	209
Engine Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement .....	210
Underbody Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement .....	211
Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel .....	211
<b>HOISTING</b> .....	212
<b>TIRES</b> .....	213
Tire Safety Information .....	213
Tires — General Information ..	220
Tire Types .....	224
Spare Tires — If Equipped ..	225
Wheel And Wheel Trim Care ..	227
<b>DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES</b> .....	228
Treadwear .....	228
Traction Grades.....	228
Temperature Grades .....	229

## TECHNICAL SPECIFICATIONS

<b>WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS</b> .....	<b>230</b>
Torque Specifications .....	230
<b>FLUID CAPACITIES — GAS ENGINE</b> ...	<b>231</b>
<b>FLUID CAPACITIES — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE</b> .....	<b>232</b>
<b>FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS — GAS ENGINE</b> .....	<b>233</b>
Engine .....	233
Chassis .....	235
<b>FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINES</b> .....	<b>236</b>
Engine .....	236
Chassis.....	238
<b>MOPAR ACCESSORIES</b> .....	<b>239</b>
Authentic Accessories By Mopar .....	239

## MULTIMEDIA

<b>CYBERSECURITY</b> .....	<b>240</b>
<b>UCONNECT 3.0.....</b>	<b>241</b>
Clock Setting .....	242
Audio Setting.....	242
Radio Operation .....	242
Disc Operation — If Equipped ..	242
USB/Audio Jack (AUX) Manual Operation .....	243
<b>UCONNECT 3 WITH 5-INCH DISPLAY — IF EQUIPPED</b> .....	<b>244</b>
Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display At A Glance .....	244
Clock Setting .....	245
Audio Setting.....	245
Radio Operation .....	245
USB/Audio Jack (AUX)/Bluetooth Operation .....	246
Voice Text Reply (Not Compatible With iPhone) .....	247

<b>UCONNECT 4C NAV WITH 12-INCH DISPLAY</b> .....	<b>248</b>
Uconnect 4C NAV At A Glance .....	248
Drag & Drop Menu Bar.....	250
Radio .....	251
Android Auto — If Equipped ..	252
Apple CarPlay Integration — If Equipped .....	257
<b>UCONNECT SETTINGS</b> .....	<b>261</b>
<b>TIPS CONTROLS AND GENERAL INFORMATION</b> .....	<b>262</b>
Steering Wheel Audio Controls ..	262
Reception Conditions.....	262
Care And Maintenance.....	262
Anti-Theft Protection .....	262

<b>SIRIUSXM GUARDIAN —</b>	
<b>IF EQUIPPED .....</b>	<b>263</b>
SiriusXM Guardian — If Equipped (Available on Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4–inch or 12–inch Display) .....	263
SiriusXM Guardian Activation ..	264
Download The Uconnect App ..	264
Renewing Subscriptions (Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4–inch or 12–inch Display) .....	265
Maintaining Your SiriusXM Guardian Account .....	265
Built-In Features .....	265
SiriusXM Guardian Remote Features	268
<b>IPOD/USB/MEDIA PLAYER</b>	
<b>CONTROL .....</b>	<b>270</b>
Audio Jack (AUX) .....	271
USB Port .....	271
Bluetooth Streaming Audio .....	271

<b>NAVIGATION .....</b>	<b>272</b>
Changing The Navigation Voice	
Prompt Volume .....	272
Finding Points Of Interest .....	273
Finding A Place By Spelling The Name .....	273
One-Step Voice Destination Entry .....	273
Setting Your Home Location ....	274
Home .....	274
Adding A Stop .....	275
Taking A Detour .....	275
SiriusXM Traffic Plus (4C NAV With 8.4–inch And 12–inch Display) .....	276
SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV With 8.4–inch And 12–inch Display) .....	276

<b>UCONNECT PHONE .....</b>	<b>277</b>
Uconnect Phone (Bluetooth Hands Free Calling) .....	277
Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System .....	280
Common Phone Commands (Examples) .....	283
Mute (Or Unmute) Microphone During Call .....	283
Transfer Ongoing Call Between Handset And Vehicle .....	284
Phonebook .....	284
Voice Command Tips .....	284
Changing The Volume .....	284
Using Do Not Disturb .....	284
Incoming Text Messages .....	285
Helpful Tips And Common Questions To Improve Bluetooth Performance With Your Uconnect System .....	286

<b>VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS</b>	<b>.....287</b>
Introducing Uconnect .....	287
Get Started .....	287
Basic Voice Commands .....	287
Radio .....	289
Media.....	290
Phone .....	291
Voice Text Reply —	
If Equipped.....	292
Climate (4C/4C NAV) .....	293
Navigation (4C NAV).....	294
SiriusXM Guardian (4C/4C NAV) —	
If Equipped.....	295
Register (4C/4C NAV) .....	295
Mobile App (4C/4C NAV).....	296
SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV) .....	296
Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped ..	297
Using Do Not Disturb .....	298
Android Auto — If Equipped ...	298
Apple CarPlay — If Equipped .	299
General Information .....	300
Additional Information .....	300

## **CUSTOMER ASSISTANCE**

<b>IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE</b>	<b>.....301</b>
FCA US LLC Customer Center..	301
FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center.....	301
In Mexico Contact .....	301
Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands .....	301
Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/ TTY).....	301
Service Contract .....	302

## **REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS .....302**

In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C. ....	302
In Canada.....	303

## **PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS .....303**

# KEYS

## Key Fob

Your vehicle uses a keyless ignition system. The ignition system consists of a key fob with Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) and a START/STOP push button ignition system. The Remote Keyless Entry system consists of a key fob and Keyless Enter-N-Go feature.

**NOTE:**The key fob may not be found if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal.

The key fob allows you to lock or unlock all doors, as well as activate the Panic Alarm from distances up to approximately 66 ft (20 m) using a handheld key fob. The key fob does not need to be pointed at the vehicle to activate the system.

### NOTE:

- In the ON/RUN position, all key fob buttons will work until the vehicle reaches 3 mph (5 km/h).
- The key fob should not be placed next to the wireless charging pad (if equipped).



Key Fob

- 1 — Unlock
- 2 — Lock
- 3 — Remote Start
- 4 — PANIC
- 5 — Emergency Key

In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or fully depleted battery. A low key fob battery can be verified by referring to the instrument cluster, which will display directions to follow.

In a situation where the battery is low or fully depleted, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side of the key fob (side opposite of the Emergency Key) against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to operate the ignition switch.

## To Unlock The Doors

Push and release the unlock button on the key fob once to unlock the driver's door. Push the unlock button twice within five seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signal lights will flash to acknowledge the unlock signal. The illuminated entry system will also turn on.

### NOTE:

The instrument cluster display or Uconnect Settings are setup for driver door first, otherwise this will unlock all doors.

## To Lock The Doors

Push and release the lock button on the key fob to lock all doors. The turn signal lights will flash and the horn will chirp to acknowledge the signal.



## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## IGNITION SWITCH

### Keyless Push Button Ignition

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button as long as the Remote Keyless Entry key fob is in the passenger compartment.

The Keyless Push Button Ignition has four operating positions; three of which are labeled and will illuminate when in position. The three positions are OFF, ACC, and ON/RUN. The fourth position is START, during start RUN will illuminate.

### NOTE:

In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button, with your foot applied on the brake pedal, and push to operate the ignition switch.



**Keyless Push Button Ignition**

The push button ignition can be placed in the following modes:

### OFF

- The engine is stopped.
- Some electrical devices (e.g. Central locking, alarm, etc.) are still available.

### ACC

- Engine is not started.
- Some electrical devices are available.

## RUN

- Driving position.
- All the electrical devices are available.

## START

- The engine will start.



### WARNING!

- When exiting the vehicle, always remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock your vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle.
- Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.



### CAUTION!

An unlocked vehicle is an invitation for thieves. Always remove key fob from the vehicle and lock all doors when leaving the vehicle unattended.

The engine only runs in the ON/RUN ignition position or from a remote start request.

In case the ignition switch does not change with the push of a button, the key fob may have a low or dead battery. In this situation, a back up method can be used to operate the ignition switch. Put the nose side (side opposite of the emergency key) of the key fob against the ENGINE START/STOP button and push to operate the ignition switch.



### Back Up Starting Method

#### NOTE:

The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle keyless-go system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the keyless-go system from starting the vehicle.

#### NOTE:

Refer to "Starting The Engine," in "Starting And Operating" in the Owner's Manual for further information.



## REMOTE START – IF EQUIPPED

### How To Use Remote Start

All of the following conditions must be met before the engine will remote start:


- Gear selector in PARK
- Doors closed
- Hood closed
- HAZARD switch off
- BRAKE switch inactive (brake pedal not pushed)
- Battery at an acceptable charge level
- PANIC button not pushed
- Fuel meets minimum requirement
- System not disabled from previous remote start event
- Vehicle security alarm not active



### WARNING!

- Do not start or run an engine in a closed garage or confined area. Exhaust gas contains Carbon Monoxide (CO) which is odorless and colorless. Carbon Monoxide is poisonous and can cause serious injury or death when inhaled.
- Keep key fobs away from children. Operation of the Remote Start System, windows, door locks or other controls could cause serious injury or death.

### To Enter Remote Start Mode

 Push and release the Remote Start button on the key fob twice within five seconds. The parking lights will flash, vehicle doors will lock, and the horn will chirp twice (if programmed). Once the vehicle has started, the engine will run for 15 minutes.

### NOTE:

- If your power door locks were unlocked, Remote Start will automatically lock the doors.
- If an engine fault is present or fuel level is low, the vehicle will start and then shut down in 10 seconds.
- The park lamps will turn on and remain on during Remote Start mode.
- For security, power window and power sunroof operation (if equipped) are disabled when the vehicle is in the Remote Start mode.
- The engine can be started two consecutive times (two 15-minute cycles) with the key fob. However, the ignition must be placed in the ON/RUN position before you can repeat the start sequence for a third cycle.

## General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## VEHICLE SECURITY ALARM

The vehicle security alarm monitors the vehicle doors and ignition for unauthorized operation. When the vehicle security alarm is activated, interior switches for door locks are disabled. The system will turn the horn off after 29 seconds, 5 seconds between cycles,

up to 8 cycles if the trigger remains active and then the vehicle security alarm will rearm itself.

### To Arm The System

Follow these steps to arm the vehicle security alarm:

1. Remove the key from the ignition system (refer to "Starting The Engine" in "Starting And Operating" for further information).
  - Make sure the vehicle ignition system is "OFF."
2. Perform one of the following methods to lock the vehicle:
  - Push lock button on the interior power door lock switch with the driver and/or passenger door open.
  - Push the lock button on the exterior Passive Entry Door Handle with a valid key fob available in the same exterior zone (refer to "Keyless Enter- N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information).
  - Push the lock button on the key fob.

3. If any doors are open, close them.

The vehicle security alarm will set when you use the power door locks, or use the key fob to lock the doors. After all the doors are locked and closed, the vehicle security light, in the instrument panel cluster, will flash rapidly for about 16 seconds to indicate that the alarm is being set. After the alarm is set, the vehicle security light will flash at a slower rate to indicate that the system is armed.

### To Disarm The System

The vehicle security alarm can be disarmed using any of the following methods:

1. Push the unlock button on the key fob.
2. Grasp the Passive Entry Unlock Door Handle with a valid key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passive entry door handle. If equipped, refer to "Keyless Enter-N-Go — Passive Entry" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.
3. Place the ignition out of the "OFF" position.

The vehicle security alarm is designed to protect your vehicle. However, you can create conditions where the system will give you a



false alarm. If one of the previously described arming sequences has occurred, the vehicle security alarm will arm regardless of whether you are in the vehicle or not. If you remain in the vehicle and open a door, the alarm will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

If the vehicle security alarm is armed and the battery becomes disconnected, the vehicle security alarm will remain armed when the battery is reconnected; the exterior lights will flash, and the horn will sound. If this occurs, disarm the vehicle security alarm.

## DOORS

### Keyless Enter-N-Go – Passive Entry

The Passive Entry system is an enhancement to the vehicle's Remote Keyless Entry system and a feature of Keyless Enter-N-Go. This feature allows you to lock and unlock the vehicle's door(s) without having to push the key fob lock or unlock buttons.

#### NOTE:

- Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” in the Owner's Manual for further information.

- If wearing gloves on your hands, or if it has been raining/snowing on the Passive Entry door handle, the unlock sensitivity can be affected, resulting in a slower response time.
- If the vehicle is unlocked by Passive Entry and no door is opened within 60 seconds, the vehicle will re-lock and if equipped will arm the security alarm.
- The vehicle's security alarm can be armed/disarmed by pushing the passive entry key fob lock/unlock buttons (if equipped).
- The key fob may not be able to be detected by the vehicle passive entry system if it is located next to a mobile phone, laptop or other electronic device; these devices may block the key fob's wireless signal and prevent the passive entry handle from locking/unlocking the vehicle.

#### To Unlock From The Driver's Side:

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver door handle, grab the front driver door handle to unlock the driver's door automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.



**Grab The Door Handle To Unlock**

#### NOTE:

If “Unlock All Doors 1st Press” is programmed, all doors will unlock when you grab hold of the front driver's door handle. To select between “Unlock Driver Door 1st Press” and “Unlock All Doors 1st Press,” refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” in the Owner's Manual for further information.

### To Unlock From The Passenger Side:

With a valid Passive Entry key fob within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the passenger door handle, grab the front passenger door handle to unlock all doors automatically. The interior door panel lock knob will raise when the door is unlocked.

### NOTE:

All doors will unlock when the front passenger door handle is grabbed regardless of the driver's door unlock preference setting ("Unlock Driver Door 1st Press" or "Unlock All Doors 1st Press").

### Preventing Inadvertent Locking Of Passive Entry Key Fob In Vehicle:

To minimize the possibility of unintentionally locking a Passive Entry key fob inside your vehicle, the Passive Entry system is equipped with an automatic door unlock feature which will function if the ignition switch is in the OFF position.

If one of the vehicle doors is open and the door panel switch is used to lock the vehicle, once all open doors have been closed the vehicle checks the inside and outside of the vehicle for any valid Passive Entry key fobs. If one of the vehicle's Passive Entry key fobs

is detected inside the vehicle, and no other valid Passive Entry key fobs are detected outside the vehicle, the Passive Entry System automatically unlocks all vehicle doors and chirps the horn three times (on the third attempt ALL doors will lock and the Passive Entry key fob can be locked in the vehicle).

### To Lock The Vehicle's Doors:

With one of the vehicle's Passive Entry key fobs within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the driver or passenger front door handles, push the door handle lock button to lock all doors.



**Push The Door Handle Button To Lock**

Do NOT grab the door handle when pushing the door handle lock button. This could unlock the door(s).



**Do NOT Grab The Door Handle When Locking**

### NOTE:

- After pushing the door handle lock button, you must wait two seconds before you can lock or unlock the doors, using either Passive Entry door handle. This is done to allow you to check if the vehicle is locked by pulling the door handle, without the vehicle reacting and unlocking.



- The Passive Entry system depends on a key fob that is not fully discharged of its coin battery capacity.
- The LED light on the key fob will not blink if the key fob battery is low or fully depleted, but a low key fob battery condition will still support the Passive Entry system functionality. When the key fob battery is low, the instrument cluster will display a message indicating that the key fob battery is low. Refer to “Keys” in “Getting To Know Your Vehicle” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

The vehicle doors can also be locked by using the key fob lock button or the lock button located on the vehicle’s interior door panel.

### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all radio frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

### Child-Protection Door Lock

To provide a safer environment for children riding in the rear seat, the rear doors (if equipped) of your vehicle have the Child-Protection Door Lock system.

To use the system, open each rear door, use a flat blade screwdriver (or emergency key) and rotate the dial to engage and disengage the Child-Protection locks. When the system on a door is engaged, that door can only be opened by using the outside door handle even if the inside door lock is in the unlocked position.



**Child Lock Control**



### WARNING!

Avoid trapping anyone in the vehicle in a collision. Remember that the sliding doors cannot be opened from the inside door handle when the Child Protection Door Locks are engaged.

## NOTE:

- After setting the Child-Protection Door Lock system, always test the door from the inside to make certain it is in the desired position.
- For emergency exit with the system engaged, move the door lock switch to the unlock position, roll down the window, and open the door with the outside door handle.

## SEATS

Seats are a part of the Occupant Restraint System of the vehicle.

### **WARNING!**

- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.
- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

*(Continued)*

### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

### **WARNING!**

- Adjusting a seat while driving may be dangerous. Moving a seat while driving could result in loss of control which could cause a collision and serious injury or death.
- Seats should be adjusted before fastening the seat belts and while the vehicle is parked. Serious injury or death could result from a poorly adjusted seat belt.
- Do not ride with the seatback reclined so that the shoulder belt is no longer resting against your chest. In a collision you could slide under the seat belt, which could result in serious injury or death.

### **Driver Memory Seats – If Equipped**

This feature allows the driver to store up to two different memory profiles for easy recall through memory buttons. Each memory profile contains desired position settings for

the driver's seat, side mirrors, adjustable pedals (if equipped), and a set of desired radio station presets. Your remote keyless entry key fob can also be programmed to recall the same positions when the unlock button is pushed.

## NOTE:

Your vehicle is equipped with two key fobs, one key fob can be linked to memory position 1 and the other key fob can be linked to memory position 2.

The driver memory seat buttons are located on the driver door, next to the door handle.



**Driver Memory Seat Buttons**



## Programming The Memory Feature

To create a new memory profile, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicle's ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Adjust all memory profile settings to desired preferences (i.e., driver's seat, outside mirrors, adjustable pedals (if equipped), and radio station presets).
3. Push and release the set (S) button on the memory switch.
4. Within five seconds, push and release either of the memory buttons (1) or (2). The instrument cluster display will show which memory position has been set.

### NOTE:

Memory profiles can be set without the vehicle in PARK.

## Linking And Unlinking The Remote Keyless Entry Key Fob To Memory

Your key fob can be programmed to recall one of two pre-programmed memory profiles by pushing the unlock button on the key fob.

### NOTE:

Before programming your key fob you must select the "Personal Settings Linked to Key Fob" feature through the Uconnect Settings. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multi-media" in your Owner's Manual for further information.

To program your key fob, perform the following:

1. Cycle the vehicle's ignition to the OFF position.
2. Select a desired memory profile 1 or 2.

### NOTE:

If a memory profile has not already been set, refer to "Programming The Memory Feature" in this section for instructions on how to set a memory profile.

3. Once the profile has been recalled, push and release the set (S) button on the memory switch.
4. Push and release button (1) or (2) accordingly. "Memory Profile Set" (1 or 2) will display in the instrument cluster.
5. Push and release the lock button on the key fob within 10 seconds.

### NOTE:

Your key fob can be unlinked to your memory settings by pushing the set (S) button, and within 10 seconds, followed by pushing the unlock button on the key fob.

## Memory Position Recall

### NOTE:

The vehicle speed must be lower than 5 mph (8 km/h) to recall memory positions. If a recall is attempted when the vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), a message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display.

### *Driver One Memory Position Recall*

- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the memory buttons on the door panel, push memory button (1).
- To recall the memory settings for driver one using the key fob, push the unlock button on the key fob linked to memory position 1.

### *Driver Two Memory Position Recall*

- To recall the memory setting for driver two using the memory buttons on the door panel, push memory button (2).
- To recall the memory settings for driver two using the key fob, push the unlock button on the key fob linked to memory position 2.

A recall can be cancelled by pushing any of the memory buttons during a recall (S, 1, or 2). When a recall is canceled, the driver's seat and the power pedals (if equipped) stop moving. A delay of one second will occur before another recall can be selected.

### **Easy Entry/Exit Seat**

This feature provides automatic driver's seat positioning to enhance driver mobility when entering and exiting the vehicle.

The distance the driver's seat moves depends on where you have the driver's seat positioned when you remove the key fob from the ignition.

- When you remove the key fob from the ignition, the driver's seat will move about 2.4 inches (60 mm) rearward if the driver's seat position is greater than or equal to 2.7 inches (67.7 mm) forward of

the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition into the ACC or RUN position.

- When you remove the key fob from the ignition, the driver's seat will move to a position 0.3 inches (7.7 mm) forward of the rear stop if the driver's seat position is between 0.9 inches and 2.7 inches (22.7 mm and 67.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. The seat will return to its previously set position when you place the ignition to the ACC or RUN position.
- The Easy Entry/Easy Exit feature is disabled when the driver's seat position is less than 0.9 inches (22.7 mm) forward of the rear stop. At this position, there is no benefit to the driver by moving the seat for Easy Exit or Easy Entry.

Each stored memory setting will have an associated Easy Entry and Easy Exit position.


### **NOTE:**

The Easy Entry/Exit feature is not enabled when the vehicle is delivered from the factory. The Easy Entry/Exit feature is enabled (or later disabled) through the programmable features in the Uconnect system.

Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” in the Owner's Manual for further information.

### **Heated Seats – If Equipped**

On some models, the front and rear seats may be equipped with heaters located in the seat cushions and seat backs.





 **WARNING!**

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion or other physical condition must exercise care when using the seat heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods of time.
- Do not place anything on the seat or seatback that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or cushion. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. Sitting in a seat that has been overheated could cause serious burns due to the increased surface temperature of the seat.



## Front Heated Seats

The heated seats control buttons are located on the center instrument panel below the touchscreen, and are also located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Push the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a second time to turn the MED setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a third time to turn the LO setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a fourth time to turn the heating elements off.

### NOTE:

- The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.
- The level of heat selected will stay on until the operator changes it.

## Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start





On models that are equipped with remote start, the driver's seat can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" in your Owner's Manual for further information.

## Rear Heated Seats

On some models, the two outboard rear seats are equipped with heated seats. The heated seat switches for these seats are located on the rear of the center console.

There are two heated seat switches that allow the rear passengers to operate the seats independently. You can choose from HI, MED, LO, or OFF heat settings. Amber indicator lights in each switch indicate the level of heat in use.

- Push the heated seat button  once to turn the HI setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a second time to turn the MED setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a third time to turn the LO setting on.
- Push the heated seat button  a fourth time to turn the heating elements off.

### NOTE:



- The level of heat selected will stay on until the operator changes it.
- Once a heat setting is selected, heat will be felt within two to five minutes.
- The engine must be running for the heated seats to operate.


## Ventilated Seats — If Equipped


### Front Ventilated Seats

Located in the seat cushion are small fans that draw the air from the passenger compartment and move air through fine perforations in the seat cover to help keep the driver and front passenger cooler in higher ambient temperatures. The fans operate at three speeds, HI, MED and LO.

The front ventilated seats control buttons are located on the center instrument panel below the touchscreen, and are also located within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the ventilated seat button  once to choose HI.
- Press the ventilated seat button  a second time to choose MED.

□ Press the ventilated seat button  a third time to choose LO.

□ Press the ventilated seat button  a fourth time to turn the ventilation off.

**NOTE:**

The engine must be running for the ventilated seats to operate.


**Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start**

On models that are equipped with remote start, the ventilated seats can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

## HEAD RESTRAINTS

Head restraints are designed to reduce the risk of injury by restricting head movement in the event of a rear impact. Head restraints should be adjusted so that the top of the head restraint is located above the top of your ear.

 **WARNING!**

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle’s seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.
- Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

**NOTE:**

Do not reverse the head restraints (making the rear of the head restraint face forward) in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of your head.

## Front Head Restraints

### Four-Way Head Restraints — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with front four-way driver and passenger head restraints.

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button, located at the base of the head restraint, and push downward on the head restraint.

To adjust the head restraint forward, pull the top of the head restraint toward the front of the vehicle as desired and release. To adjust the head restraint rearward, pull the top of the head restraint to the forward most position and release. The head restraint will return to the rear most position.

**NOTE:**

If your vehicle is equipped with a front bench seat, the center head restraint is not adjustable or removable.



**Two-Way Head Restraints — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with front two-way driver and passenger head restraints.

To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button, located at the base of head restraint, and push downward on the head restraint.



**Head Restraint Adjustment Button**

**NOTE:**

The head restraints should only be removed by qualified technicians, for service purposes only. If either of the head restraints require removal, see an authorized dealer.

**WARNING!**

- All occupants, including the driver, should not operate a vehicle or sit in a vehicle's seat until the head restraints are placed in their proper positions in order to minimize the risk of neck injury in the event of a crash.
- Head restraints should never be adjusted while the vehicle is in motion. Driving a vehicle with the head restraints improperly adjusted or removed could cause serious injury or death in the event of a collision.

**Rear Head Restraint Adjustment**

The rear seats are equipped with adjustable and removable head restraints. To raise the head restraint, pull upward on the head restraint. To lower the head restraint, push the adjustment button located on the base of the head restraint and push downward on the head restraint.

**NOTE:**

- The rear center head restraint (Crew Cab) has only one adjustment position that is used to aid in the routing of a tether. Refer to "Occupant Restraint Systems" in "Safety" in the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Do not reposition the head restraint 180 degrees to the incorrect position in an attempt to gain additional clearance to the back of the head.

**Rear Head Restraint Removal**

To remove the head restraint, push the adjustment button and the release button while pulling upward on the whole assembly. To reinstall the head restraint, put the head restraint posts into the holes and adjust it to the appropriate height.

**NOTE:**

To remove outboard restraints, the rear seat bottom must be folded up.



## WARNING!

- A loose head restraint thrown forward in a collision or hard stop could cause serious injury or death to occupants of the vehicle. Always securely stow removed head restraints in a location outside the occupant compartment.
- ALL the head restraints MUST be re-installed in the vehicle to properly protect the occupants. Follow the re-installation instructions above prior to operating the vehicle or occupying a seat.

## STEERING WHEEL

### Tilt Steering Column

This feature allows you to tilt the steering column upward or downward. The tilt lever is located on the steering column, below the multifunction lever.



Tilt Lever Location

- 1 — Adjustable Pedal Switch
- 2 — Tilt Lever

Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to unlock the steering column. With one hand firmly on the steering wheel, move the steering column up or down, as desired. Release the lever to lock the steering column firmly in place.




## WARNING!

Do not adjust the steering column while driving. Adjusting the steering column while driving or driving with the steering column unlocked, could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle. Failure to follow this warning may result in serious injury or death.


### Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped

The steering wheel contains a heating element that helps warm your hands in cold weather. The heated steering wheel has only one temperature setting. Once the heated steering wheel has been turned on, it will stay on until the operator turns it off. The heated steering wheel may not turn on when it is already warm.

The heated steering wheel control button is located on the center instrument panel below the touchscreen, as well as within the climate or controls screen of the touchscreen.

- Press the heated steering wheel button  once to turn the heating element on.



- Press the heated steering wheel button  a second time to turn the heating element off.

**NOTE:**

The engine must be running for the heated steering wheel to operate.

**Vehicles Equipped With Remote Start**

On models that are equipped with remote start, the heated steering wheel can be programmed to come on during a remote start.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

**WARNING!**

- Persons who are unable to feel pain to the skin because of advanced age, chronic illness, diabetes, spinal cord injury, medication, alcohol use, exhaustion, or other physical conditions must exercise care when using the steering wheel heater. It may cause burns even at low temperatures, especially if used for long periods.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not place anything on the steering wheel that insulates against heat, such as a blanket or steering wheel covers of any type and material. This may cause the steering wheel heater to overheat.

**DRIVER ADJUSTABLE PEDALS — IF EQUIPPED**

The adjustable pedals system is designed to allow a greater range of driver comfort for steering wheel tilt and seat position. This feature allows the brake and accelerator pedals to move toward or away from the driver to provide improved position with the steering wheel.

The adjustable pedal switch is located to the left side of the steering column.

- The pedals can be adjusted with the ignition OFF.
- The pedals **cannot** be adjusted when the vehicle is in REVERSE or when the Speed Control System is on. The following messages will appear on vehicles equipped with an instrument cluster display if the pedals are attempted to be

adjusted when the system is locked out: “Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Cruise Control Engaged” or “Adjustable Pedal Disabled — Vehicle In Reverse”.

**NOTE:**

- Always adjust the pedals to a position that allows full pedal travel.
- Further small adjustments may be necessary to find the best possible seat/pedal position.
- For vehicles equipped with Driver Memory Seat, you can use your remote keyless entry key fob or the memory switch on the driver’s door trim panel to return the adjustable pedals to pre-programmed positions. Refer to “Driver Memory Seat” in “Getting To Know Your Vehicle” for further information.



## WARNING!

Do not adjust the pedals while the vehicle is moving. You could lose control and have an accident. Always adjust the pedals while the vehicle is parked.



## CAUTION!

Do not place any article under the adjustable pedals or impede its ability to move, as it may cause damage to the pedal controls. Pedal travel may become limited if movement is stopped by an obstruction in the adjustable pedal's path.

# MIRRORS

## Power Convex Mirror Switch – If Equipped

The Power Convex Mirror Switch is located on the door trim panel, above the power mirror controls. The switch enables the movement of the convex portion of both the driver and passenger outside mirrors.



**Power Convex Mirror Switch**

To adjust the convex portion of the outside mirrors, push the Power Convex Mirror Switch. Then, select the mirror you want to adjust by using the L (left) or R (right) buttons.

To return the control to the large mirror, push the Power Convex Mirror Switch a second time.

### NOTE:

If the Power Convex Mirror Switch is not pushed a second time, the switch will automatically default back to the larger portion of the outside mirrors after a period of time.

## Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse – If Equipped

Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse provides automatic outside mirror positioning which will aid the driver's view of the ground rearward of the front doors. The outside mirrors will move slightly downward from the present position when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE. The outside mirrors will then return to the original position when the vehicle is shifted out of the REVERSE position. Each stored memory setting will have an associated Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse position.



**NOTE:**

The Tilt Side Mirrors In Reverse feature is not turned on when delivered from the factory.

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

### Power Folding Outside Mirrors For Standard And Trailer Tow – If Equipped

If equipped with power folding mirrors, they can be electrically folded rearward and unfolded into the drive position.

The switch for the power folding mirrors is located between the power mirror switches L (left) and R (right). Push the switch once and the mirrors will fold in, push the switch a second time and the mirrors will return to the normal driving position.

If the mirror is manually folded after electrically cycled, a potential extra button push is required to get the mirrors back to the home position. If the mirror does not electrically fold, check for ice or dirt build up at the pivot area which can cause excessive drag.



**Power Folding Mirror Switch**

### Resetting The Power Folding Outside Mirrors

You may need to reset the power folding mirrors if the following occurs:

- The mirrors are accidentally blocked while folding.
- The mirrors are accidentally manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors come out of the unfolded position.
- The mirrors shake and vibrate at normal driving speeds.

### To Reset The Power Folding Mirrors:

1. Using the power folding mirror switch, move the mirror to its normal driving (home) position.
2. Using the power folding mirror switch, move the mirror to the full retract position (this may require multiple button pushes). This resets them to their normal position.

**NOTE:**

- The power fold mirrors are designed to operate while the vehicle is stationary or traveling at moderate speeds. If you attempt to power fold the mirrors at high speeds they may not fully open or close. You should slow down to a moderate speed and complete the operation.
- When pushing the power fold button 10 or more times in one minute the system shuts down for one minute to protect the motors from over heating.

### Outside Mirrors Folding Feature

All outside mirrors are designed to be able to be manually folded both forward and rearward to prevent damage.



## CAUTION!

It is recommended to fold the mirrors into the full rearward position to resist damage when entering a car wash or a narrow location.

## EXTERIOR LIGHTS

### Multifunction Lever

The multifunction lever is located on the left side of the steering column.



Multifunction Lever

### Headlight Switch

The headlight switch is located on the left side of the instrument panel. This switch controls the operation of the headlights,

parking lights, automatic headlights — if equipped, instrument panel light dimming, cargo light — if equipped, and fog lights — if equipped.



Headlight Switch

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1 — Rotate Head-    | 4 — Cargo Light     |
| light Controls      | Switch              |
| 2 — Ambient Light   | 5 — Front Fog Light |
| Dimmer              | Switch              |
| 3 — Instrument Pan- |                     |
| el Dimmer           |                     |

Rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the first detent for parking light and instrument

panel light operation. Rotate the headlight switch to the second detent for headlight, parking light, and instrument panel light operation.

### Daytime Running Lights (DRL) — If Equipped

The headlights on your vehicle will illuminate when the engine is started and the transmission is in any gear except PARK. This provides a constant "lights on" condition until the ignition is turned OFF. The lights illuminate at less than half of normal intensity. If the parking brake is applied, the Daytime Running Lights (DRL) will turn off. Also, if a turn signal is activated, the DRL lamp on the same side of the vehicle may turn off for the duration of the turn signal activation. Once the turn signal is no longer active, the DRL lamp will illuminate.

#### NOTE:

If allowed by law in the country in which the vehicle was purchased, the Daytime Running Lights can be turned on and off using the Uconnect System, refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multimedia" in the Owner's Manual for further information.



**High/Low Beam Switch**

Push the multifunction lever toward the instrument panel to switch the headlights to high beam. Pulling the multifunction lever back toward the steering wheel will turn the low beams back on, or shut the high beams off.

**Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control – If Equipped**

The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control system provides increased forward lighting at night by automating high beam control through the use of a digital camera mounted on the inside rearview mirror. This camera detects vehicle specific light and automatically switches from high beams to low beams until the approaching vehicle is out of view.

**NOTE:**

- The Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control can be turned on or off by selecting “ON” under “Auto Dim High Beams” within your Uconnect settings, as well as turning the headlight switch to the AUTO position. Refer to “Uconnect

Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

- Broken, muddy, or obstructed headlights and taillights of vehicles in the field of view will cause headlights to remain on longer (closer to the vehicle). Also, dirt, film, and other obstructions on the windshield or camera lens will cause the system to function improperly.

If the windshield or Automatic High Beam Headlamp Control mirror is replaced, the mirror must be re-aimed to ensure proper performance. See a local authorized dealer.

**To Activate**

1. The Automatic High Beams are enabled through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.
2. Turn the headlight switch to the AUTO headlight position.
3. Push the multifunction lever away from you (toward front of vehicle) to engage the high beam mode.

**NOTE:**

The Automatic High Beams will not activate until the vehicle is at or above 12 mph (20 km/h).

**To Deactivate**

1. Pull the multifunction lever toward you (or rearward in vehicle) to manually deactivate the system (normal operation of low beams).
2. Push back on the multifunction lever to reactivate the system.

The Automatic High Beams can also be deactivated through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

**Flash-To-Pass**

You can signal another vehicle with your headlights by lightly pulling the multifunction lever toward you. This will cause the high beam headlights to turn on, and remain on, until the lever is released.

## Automatic Headlights

This system automatically turns your headlights on or off based on ambient light levels. To turn the system on, turn the headlight switch to the extreme clockwise position aligning the indicator with the AUTO on the headlight switch. When the system is on, the Headlight Time Delay feature is also on. This means your headlights will stay on for up to 90 seconds after you turn the ignition switch OFF. To turn the Automatic System off, turn the headlight switch counterclockwise to the O (off) position.

**NOTE:** The engine must be running before the headlights will come on in the Automatic mode.

## Parking Lights And Panel Lights

To turn on the parking lights and instrument panel lights, from the O (off) position, rotate the headlight switch clockwise to the first detent. To turn off the parking lights, rotate the headlight switch back to the O (off) position.

## Headlights On With Wipers (Available With Automatic Headlights Only)

When this feature is active, the headlights will turn on approximately 10 seconds after the wipers are turned on if the headlight switch is placed in the AUTO position. In addition, the headlights will turn off when the wipers are turned off, if they were turned on by this feature.

### NOTE:

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## Headlight Delay

To aid in your exit, your vehicle is equipped with a headlight delay that will leave the headlights on for approximately up to 90 seconds. This delay is initiated when the ignition is turned off while the headlight switch is on, and then the headlight switch is cycled off. Headlight delay can be canceled by either turning the headlight switch on then off, or by turning the ignition to the ON/RUN position.

### NOTE:

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## Front Fog Lights – If Equipped

To activate the front fog lights, turn on the parking lights or low beam headlights and push in the center of the headlight switch control knob. Pushing the headlight switch control knob a second time will turn the front fog lights off.



Front Fog Light Switch



## Turn Signals

Move the multifunction lever up or down and the arrows on each side of the instrument cluster display will flash to show proper operation of the front and rear turn signal lights.

### NOTE:

If either light remains on and does not flash, or there is a very fast flash rate, check for a defective outside light bulb. If an indicator fails to light when the lever is moved, it would suggest that the indicator bulb is defective.

## Cargo Lights – If Equipped

The cargo lights (if equipped) and trailer spotter lamps (if equipped) are turned on by pushing the cargo lights button located on the lower half of the headlight switch.



### Cargo Lights Button On Headlight Switch

The cargo lights will turn on for approximately 60 seconds when a key fob unlock button is pushed, as part of the Illuminated Entry feature.

## WINDSHIELD WIPERS AND WASHERS

### Windshield Wipers

The wipers and washers are operated by a switch in the multifunction lever. Turn the end of the lever to select the desired wiper speed.

Rotate the end of the lever upward, to the first detent past the intermittent settings for low-speed wiper operation. Rotate the end of the lever upward to the second detent past the intermittent settings for high-speed wiper operation.

### Intermittent Wiper System

The intermittent feature of this system was designed for use when weather conditions make a single wiping cycle, with a variable pause between cycles, desirable. For maximum delay between cycles, rotate the control knob upward to the first detent.

The delay interval decreases as you rotate the knob until it enters the low continual speed position. The delay can be regulated from a maximum of about 18 seconds between cycles, to a cycle every one second. The delay intervals will double in duration when the vehicle speed is 10 mph (16 km/h) or less.

### Windshield Washers

To use the windshield washer, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the second detent. Washer fluid will be sprayed and the wiper will operate for two to three cycles after the washer knob is released from this position.

If the washer knob is depressed while in the delay range, the wiper will operate for several seconds after the washer knob is released. It will then resume the intermittent interval previously selected. If the washer knob is pushed while in the off position, the wiper will turn on and cycle approximately three times after the wash knob is released.

To prevent freeze-up of your windshield washer system in cold weather, select a solution or mixture that meets or exceeds the temperature range of your climate. This rating information can be found on most washer fluid containers.



### **WARNING!**

Sudden loss of visibility through the windshield could lead to a collision. You might not see other vehicles or other obstacles. To avoid sudden icing of the windshield during freezing weather, warm the windshield with the defroster before and during windshield washer use.

### **Mist Feature**

When a single wipe to clear off road mist or spray from a passing vehicle is needed, push the washer knob, located on the end of the multifunction lever, inward to the first detent and release. The wipers will cycle one time and automatically shut off.

#### **NOTE:**

The mist feature does not activate the washer pump; therefore, no washer fluid will be sprayed on the windshield. The wash function must be used in order to spray the windshield with washer fluid.

### **Rain Sensing Wipers – If Equipped**

This feature senses moisture on the windshield and automatically activates the wipers for the driver. The feature is especially useful for road splash or overspray from the windshield washers of the vehicle ahead. Rotate the end of the multifunction lever to one of five settings to activate this feature.

#### **NOTE:**

This feature can be programmed through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted with the multifunction lever. Wiper delay position 1 is the least sensitive, and wiper delay position 5 is the most sensitive. Position 3 should be used for normal rain conditions. Positions 1 and 2 can be used if the driver desires less wiper sensitivity. Positions 4 and 5 can be used if the driver desires more sensitivity. Place the wiper switch in the O (off) position when not using the system.



**NOTE:**

- The Rain Sensing feature will not operate when the wiper switch is in the low or high-speed position.
- The Rain Sensing feature may not function properly when ice, or dried salt water is present on the windshield.
- Use of Rain-X or products containing wax or silicone may reduce Rain Sensing performance.

The Rain Sensing system has protection features for the wiper blades and arms, and will not operate under the following conditions:

- **Low Ambient Temperature** — When the ignition is first turned ON, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 0 mph (0 km/h), or the outside temperature is greater than 32°F (0°C).
- **Transmission In NEUTRAL Position** — When the ignition is ON, and the transmission is in the NEUTRAL position, the Rain Sensing system will not operate until the wiper switch is moved, vehicle speed is greater than 5 mph (8 km/h), or the gear selector is moved out of the NEUTRAL position.

- **Remote Start Mode Inhibit** — On vehicles equipped with Remote Starting system, Rain Sensing wipers are not operational when the vehicle is in the remote start mode. Once the operator is in the vehicle and has placed the ignition switch in the RUN position, Rain Sensing wiper operation can resume, if it has been selected, and no other inhibit conditions (mentioned previously) exist.

## CLIMATE CONTROLS

The Climate Control System allows you to regulate the temperature, air flow, and direction of air circulating throughout the vehicle. The controls are located on the touchscreen (if equipped), on the sides of the touchscreen, or on the instrument panel below the radio.

### Climate Controls With A Touchscreen Overview



Uconnect 4/4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Automatic Climate Controls





Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Automatic Climate Controls





**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Automatic Climate Control Knobs**




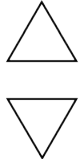


## Control Descriptions




## NOTE:





Icons and descriptions can vary based upon vehicle equipment.

Icon	Description
<p><b>MAX A/C</b></p>	<p><b>MAX A/C</b> Press and release to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when MAX A/C is on. Performing this function again will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch into manual mode and the MAX A/C indicator will turn off.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The MAX A/C button is only available on the touchscreen.</p>
<p><b>A/C Control Knob</b></p>  <p><b>A/C Button</b></p> <p><b>A/C</b></p>	<p><b>A/C Button</b> Press and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current setting, the indicator illuminates when A/C is on.</p>
	<p><b>Recirculation Button</b> Press and release this button to change the system between recirculation mode and outside air mode. Recirculation can be used when outside conditions such as smoke, odors, dust, or high humidity are present. Recirculation can be used in all modes. Recirculation may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield. The A/C can be deselected manually without disturbing the mode control selection. Continuous use of the Recirculation mode may make the inside air stuffy and window fogging may occur. Extended use of this mode is not recommended.</p>

Icon	Description
<p><b>AUTO Control Knob</b></p>  <p><b>AUTO Button</b></p> <p>AUTO</p>	<p><b>AUTO</b></p> <p>Automatically controls the interior cabin temperature by adjusting airflow distribution and amount. Toggling this function will cause the system to switch between manual mode and automatic modes. Refer to “Automatic Operation” within this section for more information.</p>
 <p>FRONT</p>	<p><b>Front Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Press and release the touchscreen button, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to change the current airflow setting to Defrost mode. The indicator illuminates when this feature is on. Air comes from the windshield and side window demist outlets. When the defrost button is selected, the blower level may increase. Use Defrost mode with maximum temperature settings for best windshield and side window defrosting and defogging. When toggling the front defrost mode button, the climate system will return to previous setting.</p>
 <p>REAR</p>	<p><b>Rear Defrost Button</b></p> <p>Press and release the button on the touchscreen, or push and release the button on the faceplate, to turn on the rear window defroster and the heated outside mirrors (if equipped). An indicator will illuminate when the rear window defroster is on. The rear window defroster automatically turns off after ten minutes.</p>
	<p><b>Driver and Passenger Temperature Up and Down Buttons</b></p> <p>Provides the driver and passenger with independent temperature control. Push the red button on the faceplate or touchscreen or press and slide the temperature bar towards the red arrow button on the touchscreen for warmer temperature settings. Push the blue button on the faceplate or touchscreen or press and slide the temperature bar towards the blue arrow button on the touchscreen for cooler temperature settings.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <p>The numbers within the temperature display will only appear if the system is equipped with an automatic climate control system.</p>



Icon	Description
<p>SYNC</p>	<p><b>SYNC</b></p> <p>Press the SYNC button on the touchscreen to toggle the SYNC feature on/off. The SYNC indicator is illuminated when this feature is enabled. SYNC is used to synchronize the passenger temperature setting with the driver temperature setting. Changing the passenger's temperature setting while in SYNC will automatically exit this feature.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <p>The SYNC button is only available on the touchscreen.</p>
<p><b>Blower Control Knob</b></p>  <p><b>Blower Control Buttons</b></p> 	<p><b>Blower Control</b></p> <p>Blower Control is used to regulate the amount of air forced through the climate system. There are seven blower speeds available. Adjusting the blower will cause automatic mode to switch to manual operation. The speeds can be selected using either the blower control knob on the faceplate or the buttons on the touchscreen.</p> <p>□ <b>Faceplate:</b> The blower speed increases as you turn the blower control knob clockwise from the lowest blower setting. The blower speed decreases as you turn the blower control knob counterclockwise.</p> <p>□ <b>Touchscreen:</b> Use the small blower icon to reduce the blower setting and the large blower icon to increase the blower setting. Blower can also be selected by pressing the blower bar area between the icons.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <p><b>On Uconnect 4C NAV With 12–inch display radios, pressing the blower control button below one turns the Climate Control system OFF.</b></p>
<p><b>Mode Control Knob</b></p>  <p><b>Mode Controls Button</b></p>	<p><b>Modes Control</b></p> <p><b>Control Knob:</b> Push the Mode Control Knob to change the airflow distribution mode. The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, defrost outlets and demist outlets.</p> <p><b>Touchscreen:</b> Select Mode by pressing one of the Mode buttons on the touchscreen to change the airflow distribution mode. The airflow distribution mode can be adjusted so air comes from the instrument panel outlets, floor outlets, defrost outlets and demist outlets.</p>

Icon	Description
<p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Panel Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the outlets in the instrument panel. Each of these outlets can be individually adjusted to direct the flow of air. The air vanes of the center outlets and outboard outlets can be moved up and down or side to side to regulate airflow direction. There is a shut off wheel located below the air vanes to shut off or adjust the amount of airflow from these outlets.</p>
<p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Bi-Level Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the instrument panel outlets and floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b></p> <p>Bi-Level mode is designed under comfort conditions to provide cooler air out of the panel outlets and warmer air from the floor outlets.</p>
<p><b>Floor Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Floor Mode</b></p> <p>Air comes from the floor outlets. A slight amount of air is directed through the defrost and side window demister outlets.</p>
<p><b>Mix Mode</b></p> 	<p><b>Mix Mode</b></p> <p>Air is directed through the floor, defrost, and side window demister outlets. This setting works best in cold or snowy conditions that require extra heat to the windshield. This setting is good for maintaining comfort while reducing moisture on the windshield.</p>
<p><b>OFF</b></p>	<p><b>Climate Control OFF Button</b></p> <p>This button turns the Climate Control System off.</p>



## Climate Control Functions

### A/C (Air Conditioning)

The Air Conditioning (A/C) button allows the operator to manually activate or deactivate the air conditioning system. When the air conditioning system is turned on, cool dehumidified air will flow through the outlets into the cabin. For improved fuel economy, press the A/C button to turn off the air conditioning and manually adjust the blower and airflow mode settings. Also, make sure to select only Panel, Bi-Level, or Floor modes.

#### NOTE:

- For Manual Climate Controls, if the system is in Mix, Floor or Defrost Mode, the A/C can be turned off, but the A/C system shall remain active to prevent fogging of the windows.
- If fog or mist appears on the windshield or side glass, select Defrost mode, and increase blower speed if needed.
- If your air conditioning performance seems lower than expected, check the front of the A/C condenser (located in front of the radiator), for an accumulation of dirt or insects. Clean with a gentle water spray from the

front of the radiator and through the condenser.

### MAX A/C

MAX A/C sets the control for maximum cooling performance.

Press and release to toggle between MAX A/C and the prior settings. The button illuminates when MAX A/C is on.

In MAX A/C, the blower level and mode position can be adjusted to desired user settings. Pressing other settings will cause the MAX A/C operation to switch to the selected setting and MAX A/C to exit.

### Recirculation

In cold weather, use of Recirculation mode may lead to excessive window fogging. The Recirculation feature may be unavailable (button on the touchscreen greyed out) if conditions exist that could create fogging on the inside of the windshield.

## Automatic Temperature Control (ATC)

### Automatic Operation

1. Push the AUTO button on the faceplate, or the AUTO button on the touchscreen on the Automatic Temperature Control (ATC) Panel.
2. Next, adjust the temperature you would like the system to maintain by adjusting the driver and passenger temperature control buttons. Once the desired temperature is displayed, the system will achieve and automatically maintain that comfort level.
3. When the system is set up for your comfort level, it is not necessary to change the settings. You will experience the greatest efficiency by simply allowing the system to function automatically.

#### NOTE:

- It is not necessary to move the temperature settings for cold or hot vehicles. The system automatically adjusts the temperature, mode, and blower speed to provide comfort as quickly as possible.

- The temperature can be displayed in U.S. or Metric units by selecting the US/Metric customer-programmable feature. Refer to the “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

To provide you with maximum comfort in the Automatic mode during cold start-ups, the blower fan will remain on low until the engine warms up. The blower will increase in speed and transition into Auto mode.

### Manual Operation Override

This system offers a full complement of manual override features. The AUTO symbol in the front ATC display will be turned off when the system is being used in the manual mode.

### Operating Tips

#### Summer Operation

The engine cooling system must be protected with a high-quality antifreeze coolant to provide proper corrosion protection and to protect against engine overheating. OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032) is recommended.

#### Winter Operation

To ensure the best possible heater and defroster performance, make sure the engine cooling system is functioning properly and the proper amount, type, and concentration of coolant is used. Use of the Air Recirculation mode during Winter months is not recommended, because it may cause window fogging.

#### Vacation/Storage

Before you store your vehicle, or keep it out of service (i.e., vacation) for two weeks or more, run the air conditioning system at idle for about five minutes, in fresh air with the blower setting on high. This will ensure adequate system lubrication to minimize the possibility of compressor damage when the system is started again.

#### Window Fogging

Vehicle windows tend to fog on the inside in mild, rainy, and/or humid weather. To clear the windows, select Defrost or Mix mode and increase the front blower speed. Do not use the Recirculation mode without A/C for long periods, as fogging may occur.



#### CAUTION!

Failure to follow these cautions can cause damage to the heating elements:

- Use care when washing the inside of the rear window. Do not use abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window. Use a soft cloth and a mild washing solution, wiping parallel to the heating elements. Labels can be peeled off after soaking with warm water.
- Do not use scrapers, sharp instruments, or abrasive window cleaners on the interior surface of the window.
- Keep all objects a safe distance from the window.

#### Outside Air Intake

Make sure the air intake, located directly in front of the windshield, is free of obstructions, such as leaves. Leaves collected in the air intake may reduce airflow, and if they enter the plenum, they could plug the water drains. In Winter months, make sure the air intake is clear of ice, slush, and snow.



## Cabin Air Filter

The climate control system filters out dust and pollen from the air. Contact an authorized dealer to service your cabin air filter, and to have it replaced when needed.

## WINDOWS

### Power Windows

#### Power Window Controls



Power Window Switches

The power window controls located on the driver's door trim panel have up-down switches that give you fingertip control of all power windows. There is a single opening and closing switch on the front passenger door for passenger window control and on the rear doors for rear window control. The windows will operate when the ignition switch is turned to the ON/RUN or ACC position, and for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF or until a front door is opened.

#### NOTE:

The Key Off Power Delay feature will allow the power windows to operate for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned OFF. This feature is cancelled when either front door is opened.



#### WARNING!

Never leave children unattended in a vehicle. Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. Occupants, particularly unattended children, can become entrapped by the windows while operating the power window switches. Such entrapment may result in serious injury or death.

#### Auto-Down

Both the driver and front passenger window switch have an Auto-Down feature. Push the window switch past the first detent, release, and the window will go down automatically. To cancel the Auto-Down movement, operate the switch in either the up or down direction and release the switch.

To stop the window from going all the way down during the Auto-Down operation, pull up on the switch briefly.

To open the window part way, push to the switch to the first detent and release it when you want the window to stop.

## Auto-Up Feature With Anti-Pinch Protection — If Equipped

Pull the window switch fully upward to the second detent, release, and the window will go up automatically.

To stop the window from going all the way up during the Auto-Up operation, push down on the switch briefly.

To close the window part way, lift the window switch to the first detent and release when you want the window to stop.

### NOTE:

If the window runs into any obstacle during the Auto-Closure, it will reverse direction and then go back down. Remove the obstacle and use the window switch again to close the window. Any impact due to rough road conditions may trigger the auto reverse function unexpectedly during auto closure. If this happens, pull the switch lightly to the first detent and hold to close the window manually.



### WARNING!

There is no anti-pinch protection when the window is almost closed. Be sure to clear all objects from the window before closing.

## Window Lockout Switch

The window lockout switch on the driver's door allows you to disable the window control on the rear passenger doors. To disable the window controls on the rear passenger doors, push the window lock switch into the latched or down position. To enable the window controls, push the window lock switch again and return the switch to the released or up position.



Window Lockout Switch

## Power Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

The switch for the power sliding rear window is located on the overhead console.

Push the switch rearward to open the glass. Pull the switch forward to close the glass.

## Manual Sliding Rear Window — If Equipped

A locking device in the center of the window helps to prevent entry from the rear of the vehicle. Squeeze the lock to release the window.

## Wind Buffeting

Wind buffeting can be described as the perception of pressure on the ears or a helicopter-type sound in the ears. Your vehicle may exhibit wind buffeting with the windows down, or the sunroof (if equipped) in certain open or partially open positions. This is a normal occurrence and can be minimized. If the buffeting occurs with the rear windows open, open the front and rear windows together to minimize the buffeting. If the buffeting occurs with the sunroof open, adjust the sunroof opening to minimize the buffeting or open any window.



## HOOD

### To Open The Hood

To open the hood, two latches must be released.



**Hood Release Lever Location**

1. Pull the hood release lever located below the steering wheel at the base of the instrument panel.

2. Reach into the opening beneath the center of the hood and push the safety latch lever to the left to release it, before raising the hood.



**Safety Latch Location**

### To Close The Hood

Lower the hood to approximately 12 inches (30 cm) from the engine compartment and drop it. Make sure that the hood is completely closed.



#### **WARNING!**

Be sure the hood is fully latched before driving your vehicle. If the hood is not fully latched, it could open when the vehicle is in motion and block your vision. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious injury or death.



#### **CAUTION!**

To prevent possible damage, do not slam the hood to close it. Use a firm downward push at the front center of the hood to ensure that both latches engage.

## GARAGE DOOR OPENER — IF EQUIPPED

HomeLink replaces up to three hand-held transmitters that operate devices such as garage door openers, motorized gates, lighting or home security systems. The HomeLink unit is powered by your vehicle's 12 Volt battery.

The HomeLink buttons that are located on the sun visor designate the three different HomeLink channels.



HomeLink Buttons

### NOTE:

HomeLink is disabled when the Vehicle Security Alarm is active.



### WARNING!

- Your motorized door or gate will open and close while you are programming the universal transceiver. Do not program the transceiver if people, pets or other objects are in the path of the door or gate. Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a “stop and reverse” feature as required by Federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features.
- Vehicle exhaust contains carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas. Do not run your vehicle in the garage while programming the transceiver. Exhaust gas can cause serious injury or death.

### NOTE:

Only use this transceiver with a garage door opener that has a “stop and reverse” feature as required by federal safety standards. This includes most garage door opener models manufactured after 1982. Do not use a garage door opener without these safety features. Call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for safety information or assistance.

## Before You Begin Programming HomeLink

Be sure that your vehicle is parked outside of the garage before you begin programming.

For more efficient programming and accurate transmission of the radio-frequency signal it is recommended that a new battery be placed in the hand-held transmitter of the device that is being programmed to the HomeLink system.

To erase the channels, place the ignition in the ON/RUN position, and push and hold the two outside HomeLink buttons (I and III) for up to 20 seconds or until the orange indicator flashes.

### NOTE:

- Erasing all channels should only be performed when programming HomeLink for the first time. Do not erase channels when programming additional buttons.
- If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for information or assistance.



## Programming A Rolling Code

For programming garage door openers that were manufactured after 1995. These garage door openers can be identified by the “LEARN” or “TRAIN” button located where the hanging antenna is attached to the garage door opener.

### NOTE:

It is NOT the button that is normally used to open and close the door. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

1. Place the ignition in the ON/RUN position.
2. Place the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program while keeping the HomeLink indicator light in view.
3. Push and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you push and hold the hand-held transmitter button.
4. Continue to hold both buttons and observe the indicator light. The HomeLink indicator will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink has received the frequency signal from the hand-held

transmitter. Release both buttons after the indicator light changes from slow to rapid.

5. At the garage door opener motor (in the garage), locate the “LEARN” or “TRAINING” button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the garage door opener/device motor. Firmly push and release the “LEARN” or “TRAINING” button. On some garage door openers/devices there may be a light that blinks when the garage door opener/device is in the LEARN/TRAIN mode.

### NOTE:

You have 30 seconds in which to initiate the next step after the LEARN button has been pushed.

6. Return to the vehicle and push the programmed HomeLink button twice (holding the button for two seconds each time). If the garage door opener/device activates, programming is complete.

### NOTE:

If the garage door opener/device does not activate, push the button a third time (for two seconds) to complete the training.

To program the remaining two HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

## Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Rolling Code)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Push and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. Do not release the button.
3. Without releasing the button proceed with “Programming A Rolling Code” step 2 and follow all remaining steps.”

## Programming A Non-Rolling Code

For programming Garage Door Openers manufactured before 1995.

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Place the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program while keeping the HomeLink indicator light in view.

3. Press and hold the HomeLink button you want to program while you press and hold the hand-held transmitter button.
4. Continue to hold both buttons and observe the indicator light. The HomeLink indicator will flash slowly and then rapidly after HomeLink has received the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons after the indicator light changes from slow to rapid.
5. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button and observe the indicator light.

- If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and the garage door/device should activate when the HomeLink button is pressed.
- To program the two remaining HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

### Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Non-Rolling Code)

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. Do not release the button.
3. Without releasing the button, proceed with “Programming A Non-Rolling Code” step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

### Canadian/Gate Operator Programming

For programming transmitters in Canada/ United States that require the transmitter signals to “time-out” after several seconds of transmission.

Canadian radio frequency laws require transmitter signals to time-out (or quit) after several seconds of transmission – which may not be long enough for HomeLink to pick up the signal during programming. Similar to this Canadian law, some U.S. gate operators are designed to time-out in the same manner.

It may be helpful to unplug the device during the cycling process to prevent possible overheating of the garage door or gate motor.

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Place the hand-held transmitter 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink button you wish to program while keeping the HomeLink indicator light in view.
3. Continue to press and hold the HomeLink button, while you press and release (“cycle”) your hand-held transmitter every two seconds until HomeLink has successfully accepted the frequency signal. The indicator light will flash slowly and then rapidly when fully trained.
4. Watch for the HomeLink indicator to change flash rates. When it changes, it is programmed. It may take up to 30 seconds or longer in rare cases. The garage door may open and close while you are programming.
5. Press and hold the programmed HomeLink button and observe the indicator light.



**NOTE:**

- If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and the garage door/device should activate when the HomeLink button is pressed.
- To program the two remaining HomeLink buttons, repeat each step for each remaining button. DO NOT erase the channels.

If you unplugged the garage door opener/device for programming, plug it back in at this time.

**Reprogramming A Single HomeLink Button (Canadian/Gate Operator)**

To reprogram a channel that has been previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Cycle the ignition to the ON/RUN position.
2. Press and hold the desired HomeLink button until the indicator light begins to flash after 20 seconds. Do not release the button.
3. Without releasing the button, proceed with “Canadian/Gate Operator Programming” step 2 and follow all remaining steps.

**Using HomeLink**

To operate, push and release the programmed HomeLink button. Activation will now occur for the programmed device (i.e. garage door opener, gate operator, security system, entry door lock, home/office lighting, etc.) The hand-held transmitter of the device may also be used at any time.

**Security**

It is advised to erase all channels before you sell or turn in your vehicle.

To do this, push and hold the two outside buttons for 20 seconds until the orange indicator flashes. Note that all channels will be erased. Individual channels cannot be erased.

The HomeLink Universal Transceiver is disabled when the Vehicle Security Alarm is active.

**Troubleshooting Tips**

If you are having trouble programming HomeLink, here are some of the most common solutions:

- Replace the battery in the Garage Door Opener hand-held transmitter.

- Push the LEARN button on the Garage Door Opener to complete the training for a Rolling Code.

- Did you unplug the device for programming and remember to plug it back in?

If you have any problems, or require assistance, please call toll-free 1-800-355-3515 or, on the Internet at [HomeLink.com](http://HomeLink.com) for information or assistance.

**General Information**

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

## NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## INTERNAL EQUIPMENT

### Electrical Power Outlets

The auxiliary 12 Volt (13 Amp) power outlet can provide power for in-cab accessories designed for use with the standard "cigar lighter" plug. The 12 Volt power outlets and 5 Volt (2.5 Amp) USB Port (Charge Only) have a cap attached to the outlet indicating "12V DC," together with either a key symbol, battery symbol, or USB symbol.

A key symbol indicates that the key must be in the ON/RUN or ACC positions for the outlet to provide power. The battery symbol indicates that the outlet is connected to the battery, and can provide power at all times.



### CAUTION!

- Do not exceed the maximum power of 160 Watts (13 Amps) at 12 Volts. If the 160 Watts (13 Amps) power rating is exceeded, the fuse protecting the system will need to be replaced.
- Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not insert any other object in the power outlets as this will damage the outlet and blow the fuse. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

An auxiliary power outlet can be found in the tray on top of the center stack. This power outlet only works when the vehicle is in the ON/RUN or ACC position.



### Power Outlet — Top Of Center Stack

#### Power Outlet Fuse Locations:

- F104 Fuse 20 A Yellow UCI Port/ USB Rear Center Console
- F90 Fuse 20 A Yellow Instrument Panel Power Outlet Battery Fed (If Equipped)
- F91 Fuse 20 A Yellow Instrument Panel Power Outlet Ignition Fed (If Equipped)
- F93 Fuse 20 A Yellow Cigar Lighter/ Instrument Panel Power Outlet (If Equipped)



When the vehicle is turned off, be sure to unplug any equipment as to not drain the battery of the vehicle. All accessories connected to the outlet(s) should be removed or turned off when the vehicle is not in use to protect the battery against discharge.



### WARNING!

To avoid serious injury or death:

- ❑ Only devices designed for use in this type of outlet should be inserted into any 12 Volt outlet.
- ❑ Do not touch with wet hands.
- ❑ Close the lid when not in use and while driving the vehicle.
- ❑ If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

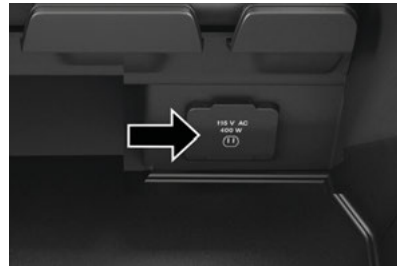


### CAUTION!

- ❑ Many accessories that can be plugged in draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular phones, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.
- ❑ Accessories that draw higher power (i.e., coolers, vacuum cleaners, lights, etc.), will discharge the battery even more quickly. Only use these intermittently and with greater caution.
- ❑ After the use of high power draw accessories, or long periods of the vehicle not being started (with accessories still plugged in), the vehicle must be driven a sufficient length of time to allow the generator to recharge the vehicle's battery.

### Power Inverter – If Equipped

If equipped, a 115 Volt (400 Watts Maximum) inverter may be located inside the center console towards the right hand side, just under the Wireless Charging Pad (if equipped). This inverter can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 400 Watts. Certain high-end video game consoles exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.



**Center Console Power Inverter Outlet**

There is also a second 115 Volt (400 Watts Maximum) power inverter located on the rear of the center console. This inverter can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to 400 Watts. Certain high-end video game consoles exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.

All power inverters are designed with built-in overload protection. If the power rating of 400 Watts is exceeded, the power inverter shuts down. Once the electrical device has been removed from the outlet the inverter should reset.



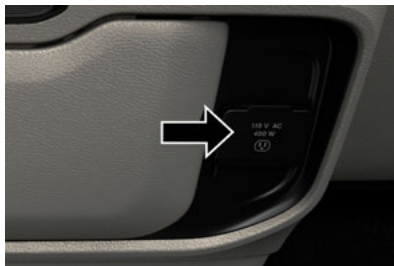
**Rear Center Console Power Inverter Outlet**

**NOTE:**

400 Watts is the maximum for the inverter, not each outlet. If three outlets are in use, 400 Watts is shared amongst the devices plugged in.

If equipped, there may be a 115 Volt (400 Watts Maximum) inverter located to the right of the center stack, just below the climate controls. This inverter can power cellular phones, electronics and other low power devices requiring power up to

400 Watts. Certain high-end video game consoles exceed this power limit, as will most power tools.



**Center Stack Power Inverter**

To turn on the power outlet, simply plug in the device. The outlet turns off when the device is unplugged.

**NOTE:**

- The Power Inverter only turns on if the ignition is in the ACC or ON/RUN position.
- Due to built-in overload protection, the power inverter shuts down if the power rating is exceeded.

**WARNING!**

To avoid serious injury or death:

- Do not insert any objects into the receptacles.
- Do not touch with wet hands.
- Close the lid when not in use.
- If this outlet is mishandled, it may cause an electric shock and failure.

**Wireless Charging Pad – If Equipped**



**Wireless Charging Pad**



Your vehicle may be equipped with a 15W 3A Qi wireless charging pad located inside of the center console just below the CD player (if equipped). This charging pad is designed to wirelessly charge your Qi enabled mobile phone. Qi is a standard that uses magnetic induction to transfer power to your mobile device.

Your mobile phone must be designed for Qi wireless charging. If the phone is not equipped with Qi wireless charging functionality, an aftermarket sleeve or a specialized back plate can be purchased from your mobile phone provider or an local electronics retailer. Please see your phone's owner's manual for further information.

The wireless charging pad is equipped with an anti-slip mat, an adjustable cradle to hold your mobile phone in place and an LED indicator light.

**CAUTION!**

The key fob should not be placed on the charging pad or within 15 cm (150 mm) of it. Doing so can cause excessive heat buildup and damage to the fob. Placing the fob in close proximity of the charging pad blocks the fob from being detected by the vehicle and prevents the vehicle from starting.

## INSTRUMENT CLUSTER DISPLAY

Your vehicle will be equipped with an instrument cluster display, which offers useful information to the driver. With the ignition in the STOP/OFF mode, opening/closing of a door will activate the display for viewing, and display the total miles, or kilometers, in the odometer. Your instrument cluster display is designed to display important information about your vehicle's systems and features. Using a driver interactive display located on the instrument panel, your instrument cluster display can show you how systems are working and give you warnings when they are not. The steering wheel mounted controls allow you to scroll through the main menus and submenus. You can access the specific information you want and make selections and adjustments.

### Instrument Cluster Display Controls

The instrument cluster display features a driver-interactive display that is located in the instrument cluster.

The instrument cluster display menu items may consist of the following:

- Speedometer
- Vehicle Info
- Driver Assist — If Equipped
- Fuel Economy
- Trip
- Trailer Tow
- Audio
- Stored Messages
- Screen Set Up
- Vehicle Settings — If Equipped
- Commercial Settings — If Equipped

The system allows the driver to select information by pushing the following instrument cluster display control buttons located on the left side of the steering wheel:



**Instrument Cluster Display Controls**

- Push and release the **up** arrow button to scroll upward through the main menu items, submenu screen, and vehicle settings.
- Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu items, submenu screen, and vehicle settings.



- Push and release the **right** arrow button to access/select the information screens or submenu screens of a main menu item. Push and hold the **right** arrow button for two seconds to reset displayed/selected features that can be reset.
- Push and release the **left** arrow button to access/select the information screens, submenu screens of a main menu item, or to return to the main menu.

### Oil Life Reset

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. The “Oil Change Required” message will display in the instrument cluster display after a single chime has sounded, to indicate the next scheduled oil change interval. The engine oil change indicator system is duty cycle based, which means the engine oil change interval may fluctuate, dependent upon your personal driving style.

#### NOTE:

Use the steering wheel instrument cluster display controls for the following procedure.

### Oil Life Reset Procedure

1. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and place the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Push and release the **down** arrow button to scroll downward through the main menu to “Vehicle Info.”
3. Push and release the **right** arrow button to access the “Vehicle Info” screen, then scroll up or down to select “Oil Life.”
4. Push and hold the **right** arrow button to select “Reset”.
5. Push and release the **down** arrow button to select “Yes,” then push and release the **right** arrow button to reset the Oil Life to 100%.
6. Push and release the **up** arrow button to exit the instrument cluster display screen.

### Secondary Method Of Resetting Engine Oil Life

1. Without pressing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button and place the ignition to the ON/RUN position (do not start the engine).
2. Fully press the accelerator pedal, slowly, three times within ten seconds.
3. Without pushing the brake pedal, push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to return the ignition to the OFF/LOCK position.

#### NOTE:

If the indicator message illuminates when you start the vehicle, the oil change indicator system did not reset. If necessary, repeat this procedure.

### Display Menu Items

Push and release the **up** or **down** arrow button until the desired selectable menu icon is highlighted in the instrument cluster display.

Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## Diesel Messages And Warnings – 6.7L Cummins Diesel Engine

### Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Messages

The Cummins diesel engine meets all diesel emissions standards, resulting in one of the lowest emitting diesel engines ever produced. To achieve these emissions standards, your vehicle is equipped with a state-of-the-art engine and exhaust system. These systems are seamlessly integrated into your vehicle and managed by the Powertrain Control Module (PCM). The PCM manages engine combustion to allow the exhaust system's catalyst to trap and burn Particulate Matter (PM) pollutants, with no input or interaction on your part.



#### WARNING!

A hot exhaust system can start a fire if you park over materials that can burn. Such materials might be grass or leaves coming into contact with your exhaust system. Do not park or operate your vehicle in areas where your exhaust system can contact anything that can burn.

Your vehicle has the ability to alert you to additional maintenance required on your

vehicle or engine. The following messages may display in your instrument cluster display:

- **Perform Service** — Your vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the instrument cluster display will display “Perform Service”. When the “Perform Service” message is displayed in the instrument cluster display it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance performed. Emissions maintenance may include replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element. The procedure for clearing and resetting the “Perform Service” indicator message is located in the appropriate Service Information.
- **Exhaust System — Regeneration Required Now** — “Exhaust Filter XX% Full Safely Drive at Highway Speeds to Remedy” will be displayed in the instrument cluster display if the exhaust particulate filter reaches 80% of its maximum storage capacity. Under conditions of exclusive short duration and low speed driving cycles, your Cummins diesel engine and exhaust after-treatment system may never reach the conditions required to remove

the trapped PM. If this occurs, the “Exhaust Filter XX% Full Safely Drive at Highway Speeds to Remedy” message will be displayed in the instrument cluster display. If this message is displayed, you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition

By simply driving your vehicle at highway speeds for as little as 45 minutes, you can remedy the condition in the particulate filter system and allow your Cummins diesel engine and exhaust after-treatment system to remove the trapped PM and restore the system to normal operating condition.

- **Exhaust System — Regeneration In Process Exhaust Filter XX% Full** — Indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) is self-cleaning. Maintain your current driving condition until regeneration is completed.
- **Exhaust System — Regeneration Completed** — This message indicates that the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) self-cleaning is completed. If this message is displayed, you will hear one chime to assist in alerting you of this condition.



- **Exhaust Service Required — See Dealer Now** — This message indicates regeneration has been disabled due to a system malfunction. At this point the engine Powertrain Control Module (PCM) will register a fault code, the instrument panel will display a MIL light.



### CAUTION!

See your authorized dealer, as damage to the exhaust system could occur soon with continued operation.

- **Exhaust Filter Full — Power Reduced See Dealer** — This message indicates the PCM has derated the engine to limit the likelihood of permanent damage to the after-treatment system. If this condition is not corrected and a dealer service is not performed, extensive exhaust after-treatment damage can occur. To correct this condition it will be necessary to have your vehicle serviced by your local authorized dealer.

#### NOTE:

Failing to follow the oil change indicator, changing your oil and resetting the oil change indicator by 0 miles remaining will prevent the diesel exhaust filter from performing its cleaning routine. This will

shortly result in a Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) and reduced engine power. Only an authorized dealer will be able to correct this condition.



### CAUTION!

See your authorized dealer, as damage to the exhaust system could occur soon with continued operation.

### Cold Ambient Derate Mode Messages

The vehicle will display messages when a derate (engine power reduction) is activated to protect the engine during start up in cold ambient temperatures.

- **Engine Power Reduced During Warmup** — This message will display during start up when the ambient temperature is between 10° F (-12° C) and -10° F (-23° C).
- **Engine Power Reduced Up To 30 Sec (Seconds) During Warmup** — This message will display during start up when the ambient temperature is between -10° F (-23° C) and -25 F (-32° C).
- **Engine Power Reduced Up To 2 Min (Minutes) During Warmup** — This message will display during start up when the

ambient temperature is -25° F (-32° C) and below.

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine warm up protection feature that may limit engine performance after cold starting at low ambient temperatures. The length of time engine speed is limited is dependent upon engine coolant temperature. Engine speed may be briefly limited to 1000 RPM after starting with coolant temperature below freezing conditions, and may be limited to 1000 RPM for up to approximately 2 minutes under more severe cold conditions.

- **Coolant Low** — This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low. Refer to “Dealer Service” in “Servicing And Maintenance” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

### Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Warning Messages

There are four different messages which are displayed if the vehicle detects that the DEF system has been filled with a fluid other than DEF, has experienced component failures, or when tampering has been detected. The vehicle may be limited to a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H) if the DEF system is not

serviced within less than 200 miles (322 km) of the fault being detected.

When the DEF system needs to be serviced the following warnings will display:

- **DEF Low Refill Soon** — This message will display when the low level is reached, during vehicle start up, and with increased frequency during vehicle operation. It will be accompanied by a single chime. Approximately 5 gallons (19 Liters) of DEF is required to refill the tank when this message is initially displayed. on pickup applications, and approximately 7 gallons (26 Liters) are required on chassis-cab applications.
- **Speed Limited to 5 MPH in XXX mi Refill DEF** — This message will continuously display if the “DEF Low Refill Soon” message is ignored, and the frequency of occurrence of the chime will increase unless up to 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) of DEF is added to the tank.
- **5 MPH Max Speed on Restart, Long Idle or Refuel Refill DEF** — This message will continuously display when the counter reaches zero, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime.

The vehicle will only be capable of a maximum speed of 5 MPH upon the first of the following conditions to occur:

- If the vehicle is shutoff and restarted.
- If the vehicle is idled for an extended period of time, approximately one hour or greater.
- If the system detects that the level of fuel in the tank has increased.  
Add a minimum of 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) of DEF to the tank in order to avoid vehicle operation at a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H).

#### **NOTE:**

A minimum of 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) may be required to restore normal vehicle operation. Although the vehicle will start normally and can be placed in gear after this message has been initially displayed, extreme caution should be utilized since the vehicle will only be capable of maneuvering at a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H).

#### **Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Fault Warning Messages**

There are five different messages which are displayed if the vehicle detects that the DEF

system has been filled with a fluid other than DEF, has experienced component failures, or when tampering has been detected. The vehicle may be limited to a maximum speed of 5 MPH (8 km/H) if the DEF system is not serviced within less than 200 miles (322 km) of the fault being detected.

When the DEF system needs to be serviced the following warnings will display:

- **Service DEF System See Dealer** — This message will display when the fault is initially detected, each time the vehicle is started, and periodically during driving. The message will be accompanied by a single chime. We recommend you drive to your nearest authorized dealer and have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.
- **5 MPH Max Speed in 150 mi Service DEF System See Dealer** — This message will display if the DEF system has not been serviced after the “Service DEF System – See Dealer” message is displayed. This message will continuously display until the mileage counter reaches zero, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime. The message will continue to countdown until it reaches zero unless the vehicle is serviced. We recommend you drive to your nearest authorized dealer and have your vehicle serviced immediately.



**NOTE:**

Under some circumstances this mileage counter may start with a value of less than 150 miles (241 km). For example, if recurring faults are detected in a time interval of less than 40 hours, the counter may restart at the value where it stopped when a previous fault was temporarily remedied, or at a minimum of 50 miles (80 km).

- **5 MPH Max Speed on Restart, Long Idle or Refuel Service DEF See Dealer** — This message will continuously display when the mileage counter reaches zero, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime.

The vehicle will only be capable of a maximum speed of 5 MPH upon the first of the following conditions to occur:

- If the vehicle is shutoff and restarted.
- If the vehicle is idled for an extended period of time, approximately one hour or greater.
- If the system detects that the level of fuel in the tank has increased.
- **5 MPH Max Speed Service DEF System See Dealer** — This message will continuously display, and will be accompanied by a periodic chime. Although the vehicle can be

started and placed in gear, the vehicle will only operate at a maximum speed of 5 MPH. Your vehicle will require towing, see your authorized dealer for service.

**NOTE:**

When this message is displayed, the engine can still be started. However, the vehicle will only operate at a maximum speed of 5 MPH.

- **Incorrect DEF Detected See Dealer** — This message will display when the fault is initially detected, each time the vehicle is started, and periodically during driving. The message will be accompanied by a single chime. We recommend you drive to your nearest authorized dealer and have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

**RAM Active Air System**

Your vehicle is equipped with an advanced Ram Active Air system that provides enhanced performance, especially when towing under demanding hot or high altitude conditions. If the instrument cluster display displays the message “Active Airbox Service Required See Dealer”, vehicle performance may be reduced until service is performed by an authorized RAM dealer.

**WARNING LIGHTS AND MESSAGES**

The warning/indicator lights will illuminate the instrument panel together with a dedicated message and/or acoustic signal when applicable. These indications are indicative and precautionary and as such must not be considered as exhaustive. Always refer to the information in this chapter in the event of a failure indication. All active telltales will display first if applicable. The system check menu may appear different based upon equipment options and current vehicle status. Some telltales are optional and may not appear.

**Red Warning Lights**** — Seat Belt Reminder Warning Light**

This warning light indicates when the driver or passenger seat belt is unbuckled. When the ignition is first placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and if the driver's seat belt is unbuckled, a chime will sound and the light will turn on. When driving, if the driver or front passenger seat belt remains unbuckled, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will flash or remain on continuously and a chime will sound.

Refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information.

## — Air Bag Warning Light

This warning light will illuminate to indicate a fault with the air bag, and will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position. This light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the air bag has been detected, it will stay on until the fault is cleared. If the light is either not on during startup, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

## — Brake Warning Light

This warning light monitors various brake functions, including brake fluid level and parking brake application. If the brake light turns on it may indicate that the parking brake is applied, that the brake fluid level is low, or that there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system reservoir.

If the light remains on when the parking brake has been disengaged, and the fluid level is at the full mark on the master cylinder reservoir, it indicates a possible brake hydraulic system malfunction or that a problem with the Brake Booster has been detected by the Anti-Lock Brake System

(ABS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. In this case, the light will remain on until the condition has been corrected. If the problem is related to the brake booster, the ABS pump will run when applying the brake, and a brake pedal pulsation may be felt during each stop.

The dual brake system provides a reserve braking capacity in the event of a failure to a portion of the hydraulic system. A leak in either half of the dual brake system is indicated by the Brake Warning Light, which will turn on when the brake fluid level in the master cylinder has dropped below a specified level.

The light will remain on until the cause is corrected.

### NOTE:

The light may flash momentarily during sharp cornering maneuvers, which change fluid level conditions. The vehicle should have service performed, and the brake fluid level checked.

If brake failure is indicated, immediate repair is necessary.



### WARNING!

Driving a vehicle with the red brake light on is dangerous. Part of the brake system may have failed. It will take longer to stop the vehicle. You could have a collision. Have the vehicle checked immediately.

Vehicles equipped with the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) are also equipped with Electronic Brake Force Distribution (EBD). In the event of an EBD failure, the Brake Warning Light will turn on along with the ABS Light. Immediate repair to the ABS system is required.

Operation of the Brake Warning Light can be checked by turning the ignition switch from the OFF position to the ON/RUN position. The light should illuminate for approximately two seconds. The light should then turn off unless the parking brake is applied or a brake fault is detected. If the light does not illuminate, have the light inspected by an authorized dealer.

The light also will turn on when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switch in the ON/RUN position.



**NOTE:**

This light shows only that the parking brake is applied. It does not show the degree of brake application.

 — **Hood Open Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate when the hood is ajar/open and not fully closed.

**NOTE:**

If the vehicle is moving, there will also be a single chime.

 — **Vehicle Security Warning Light — If Equipped**

This light will flash at a fast rate for approximately 15 seconds when the vehicle security alarm is arming, and then will flash slowly until the vehicle is disarmed.

 — **Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light**

This warning light warns of an overheated engine condition. If the engine coolant temperature is too high, this indicator will illuminate and a single chime will sound. If the temperature reaches the upper limit, a continuous chime will sound for four

minutes or until the engine is able to cool: whichever comes first.

If the light turns on while driving, safely pull over and stop the vehicle. If the A/C system is on, turn it off. Also, shift the transmission into NEUTRAL and idle the vehicle. If the temperature reading does not return to normal, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

Refer to “If Your Engine Overheats” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

 — **Battery Charge Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate when the battery is not charging properly. If it stays on while the engine is running, there may be a malfunction with the charging system. Contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

This indicates a possible problem with the electrical system or a related component.

 — **Oil Pressure Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate low engine oil pressure. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle, shut off the engine as soon as possible, and contact an

authorized dealer. A chime will sound when this light turns on.

Do not operate the vehicle until the cause is corrected. This light does not indicate how much oil is in the engine. The engine oil level must be checked under the hood.

 — **Oil Temperature Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate the engine oil temperature is high. If the light turns on while driving, stop the vehicle and shut off the engine as soon as possible. Wait for oil temperature to return to normal levels.

 — **Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate a problem with the Electronic Throttle Control (ETC) system. If a problem is detected while the vehicle is running, the light will either stay on or flash depending on the nature of the problem. Cycle the ignition when the vehicle is safely and completely stopped and the transmission is placed in the PARK position. The light should turn off. If the light remains on with the vehicle running, your vehicle will usually be drivable; however, see an authorized dealer for service as soon as possible.

**NOTE:**

This light may turn on if the accelerator and brake pedals are pressed at the same time.

If the light continues to flash when the vehicle is running, immediate service is required and you may experience reduced performance, an elevated/rough idle, or engine stall and your vehicle may require towing. The light will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and remain on briefly as a bulb check. If the light does not come on during starting, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

 — **Trailer Brake Disconnected Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate when the Trailer Brake has been disconnected.

 — **Transmission Temperature Warning Light — If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate to warn of a high transmission fluid temperature. This may occur with strenuous usage such as trailer towing. If this light turns on, stop the vehicle and run the engine at idle or slightly faster, with the transmission in PARK or

NEUTRAL, until the light turns off. Once the light turns off, you may continue to drive normally.

**WARNING!**

If you continue operating the vehicle when the Transmission Temperature Warning Light is illuminated you could cause the fluid to boil over, come in contact with hot engine or exhaust components and cause a fire.

**CAUTION!**

Continuous driving with the Transmission Temperature Warning Light illuminated will eventually cause severe transmission damage or transmission failure.

 — **Door Open Warning Light**

This indicator will illuminate when a door is ajar/open and not fully closed.


**NOTE:**

If the vehicle is moving there will also be a single chime.

**Yellow Warning Lights**
 — **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Fault Warning Light — If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate a fault in the ACC system. Contact a local authorized dealer for service.

For further information, refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)” in “Starting And Operating.”

 — **Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Warning Light (MIL)**

The Engine Check/Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is a part of an Onboard Diagnostic System called OBD II that monitors engine and automatic transmission control systems. This warning light will illuminate when the ignition is in the ON/RUN position before engine start. If the bulb does not come on when turning the ignition switch from OFF to ON/RUN, have the condition checked promptly.

Certain conditions, such as a loose or missing gas cap, poor quality fuel, etc., may illuminate the light after engine start. The vehicle should be serviced if the light stays on through several typical driving styles. In



most situations, the vehicle will drive normally and will not require towing.

When the engine is running, the MIL may flash to alert serious conditions that could lead to immediate loss of power or severe catalytic converter damage. The vehicle should be serviced by an authorized dealer as soon as possible if this occurs.



### WARNING!

A malfunctioning catalytic converter, as referenced above, can reach higher temperatures than in normal operating conditions. This can cause a fire if you drive slowly or park over flammable substances such as dry plants, wood, cardboard, etc. This could result in death or serious injury to the driver, occupants or others.



### CAUTION!

Prolonged driving with the Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) on could cause damage to the vehicle control system. It also could affect fuel economy and driveability. If the MIL is flashing, severe catalytic converter damage and power loss will soon occur. Immediate service is required.

### — Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Active Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will indicate when the Electronic Stability Control system is Active. The “ESC Indicator Light” in the instrument cluster will come on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position, and when ESC is activated. It should go out with the engine running. If the “ESC Indicator Light” comes on continuously with the engine running, a malfunction has been detected in the ESC system. If this warning light remains on after several ignition cycles, and the vehicle has been driven several miles (kilometers) at speeds greater than 30 mph (48 km/h), see an authorized dealer as soon as possible to have the problem diagnosed and corrected.

- The “ESC Off Indicator Light” and the “ESC Indicator Light” come on momentarily each time the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position.
- The ESC system will make buzzing or clicking sounds when it is active. This is normal; the sounds will stop when ESC becomes inactive.
- This light will come on when the vehicle is in an ESC event.

### — Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light indicates the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) is off.

Each time the ignition is turned to ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN, the ESC system will be on, even if it was turned off previously.

### — Low Washer Fluid Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will illuminate when the windshield washer fluid is low.

### — Low Fuel Warning Light

When the fuel level reaches approximately 3.2 gal (12 L) this light will turn on, and remain on until fuel is added.

A single warning chime will sound with Low Fuel Warning.

### — Low Coolant Level Warning Light

This telltale will turn on to indicate the vehicle coolant level is low.

## — Loose Fuel Filler Cap Warning Light — If Equipped

This warning light will illuminate when the fuel filler cap is loose. Properly close the filler cap to disengage the light. If the light does not turn off, please see an authorized dealer.

## — Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Warning Light

The warning light switches on and a message is displayed to indicate that the tire pressure is lower than the recommended value and/or that slow pressure loss is occurring. In these cases, optimal tire duration and fuel consumption may not be guaranteed.

Should one or more tires be in the condition mentioned above, the display will show the indications corresponding to each tire.



### CAUTION!

Do not continue driving with one or more flat tires as handling may be compromised. Stop the vehicle, avoiding sharp braking and steering. If a tire puncture occurs, repair immediately using the dedicated tire repair kit and contact an authorized dealer as soon as possible.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not

reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.



**CAUTION!**

The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage. Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to your authorized dealer to have your sensor function checked.

** — Anti-Lock Brake (ABS) Warning Light**

This warning light monitors the Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS). The light will turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position and may stay on for as long as four seconds.

If the ABS light remains on or turns on while driving, then the Anti-Lock portion of the brake system is not functioning and service is required as soon as possible. However, the

conventional brake system will continue to operate normally, assuming the Brake Warning Light is not also on.

If the ABS light does not turn on when the ignition is placed in the ON/RUN or ACC/ON/RUN position, have the brake system inspected by an authorized dealer.

** — Rear Axle Locker Fault Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate when a rear axle locker fault has been detected.

** — Service Forward Collision Warning (FCW) Light — If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate a fault in the Forward Collision Warning System. Contact an authorized dealer for service.

Refer to "Forward Collision Warning (FCW)" in "Safety" for further information.

** — Service 4WD Warning Light — If Equipped**

This warning light will illuminate to signal a fault with the 4WD system. If the light stays

on or comes on during driving, it means that the 4WD system is not functioning properly and that service is required. We recommend you drive to the nearest service center and have the vehicle serviced immediately.

** — Speed Control Fault Warning Light**

This warning light will illuminate to indicate the Speed Control System is not functioning properly and service is required. Contact an authorized dealer.

** — Sway Bar Fault Warning Light**

This light will illuminate when there is a fault in the sway bar disconnect system.

**Yellow Indicator Lights**** — Forward Collision Warning Off Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light illuminates to indicate that Forward Collision Warning is off.

** — TOW/HAUL Indicator Light**

This indicator light will illuminate when TOW/HAUL mode is selected.

 — **Cargo Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the cargo light is activated by pushing the cargo light button on the headlight switch.

 — **Cold Ambient Derate Mode Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when a derate (engine power reduction) is activated for protection of the turbocharger in cold ambient temperatures.

 — **Diesel Exhaust Brake Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the Diesel Exhaust Brake has been activated, and is in full strength mode.

 — **Sway Bar Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the front sway bar is disconnected.

 — **Snowplow Mode Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when Snowplow Mode has been activated.

 — **Front And Rear Axle Lock Indicator Light**

This light indicates when the front, rear, or both axles have been locked. The telltale will display the lock icon on the front and rear axles to indicate the current lock status.

 — **Rear Axle Lock Indicator Light**

This light indicates when the rear axle lock has been activated.

 — **4WD Lock Indicator Light**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOCK mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.

Refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation” in “Starting And Operating” for further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use.

 — **4WD Low Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive LOW mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked

together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. Low range provides a greater gear reduction ratio to provide increased torque at the wheels.

Refer to “Four-Wheel Drive Operation — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information on four-wheel drive operation and proper use.


 — **4WD High Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the vehicle is in the four-wheel drive HIGH mode. The front and rear driveshafts are mechanically locked together forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed.

 — **NEUTRAL Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light alerts the driver that the 4WD power transfer case is in the NEUTRAL mode and the front and rear driveshafts are disengaged from the powertrain.



 — **Low Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Indicator Light — If Equipped**

The Low Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Indicator will illuminate if the vehicle is low on Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF). Refer to "Starting And Operating" for further information.

 — **Wait To Start Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate for approximately two seconds when the ignition is turned to the RUN position. Its duration may be longer based on colder operating conditions. Vehicle will not initiate start until telltale is no longer displayed.

Refer to "Starting The Engine" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

**NOTE:**

The "Wait To Start" telltale may not illuminate if the intake manifold temperature is warm enough.

 — **Water In Fuel Indicator Light — If Equipped**

The "Water In Fuel Indicator Light" will illuminate when there is water detected in the fuel filter. If this light remains on, DO NOT

start the vehicle before you drain the water from the fuel filter to prevent engine damage.

Refer to the "Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter" section in "Dealer Service" in "Servicing And Maintenance" for further information.

**Green Indicator Lights**

 — **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Set With Target Light — If Equipped**

This will display when the ACC is set and a target vehicle is detected.

Refer to "Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

 — **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Set With No Target Detected Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This light will turn on when the Adaptive Cruise Control is SET and there is no target vehicle detected.

Refer to "Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped" in "Starting And Operating" for further information.

 — **Automatic Diesel Exhaust Brake Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the Diesel Exhaust Brake has been activated, and has switched to Automatic mode.

**ECO — ECO Mode Indicator Light**

This light will turn on when ECO Mode is active.

 — **Park/Headlight On Indicator Light**

This indicator light will illuminate when the park lights or headlights are turned on.

 — **Front Fog Indicator Light — If Equipped**

This indicator light will illuminate when the front fog lights are on.

 — **Turn Signal Indicator Lights**

When the left or right turn signal is activated, the turn signal indicator will flash independently and the corresponding exterior turn signal lamps will flash. Turn signals can be activated when the multifunction lever is moved down (left) or up (right).

## NOTE:

- A continuous chime will sound if the vehicle is driven more than 1 mile (1.6 km) with either turn signal on.
- Check for an inoperative outside light bulb if either indicator flashes at a rapid rate.
- If equipped with fog lamps, the fog lamp on the side of the activated turn signal will also illuminate to provide additional light when turning.

### — Cruise Control Set Indicator Light — If Equipped

This indicator light will illuminate when the cruise control is set to the desired speed. Refer to “Speed Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

## White Indicator Lights

### — Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Ready Light — If Equipped

This light will illuminate when the vehicle equipped with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) has been turned on but not set.

Refer to “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) — If Equipped” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### — Cruise Control Ready Indicator

This indicator light will illuminate when the cruise control is ready, but not set. Refer to “Speed Control” in “Starting And Operating” for further information.

### — Hill Descent Control (HDC) Indicator Light — If Equipped

This indicator shows when the Hill Descent Control (HDC) feature is turned on. The lamp will be on solid when HDC is armed. HDC can only be armed when the transfer case is in the “4WD LOW” position and the vehicle speed is less than 20 mph (32 km/h). If these conditions are not met while attempting to use the HDC feature, the HDC indicator light will flash on/off.

## Blue Indicator Lights

### — High Beam Indicator Light

This indicator light will illuminate to indicate that the high beam headlights are on. With the low beams activated, push the multifunction lever forward (toward the front of the vehicle) to turn on the high beams. Pull the multifunction lever rearward (toward the rear of the vehicle) to turn off the high beams. If the high beams are off, pull the lever toward you for a temporary high beam on, “flash to pass” scenario.



## AUXILIARY DRIVING SYSTEMS

### Forward Collision Warning (FCW) – If Equipped

#### Forward Collision Warning (FCW) With Mitigation — If Equipped

The Forward Collision Warning (FCW) system provides the driver with audible, visual warnings (within the instrument cluster display), and may apply a haptic warning in the form of a brake jerk, to warn the driver when it detects a potential frontal collision. The warnings are intended to provide the driver with enough time to react, avoid or mitigate the potential collision.

#### NOTE:

FCW monitors the information from the forward looking sensors as well as Electronic Brake Controller (EBC), to calculate the probability of a forward collision. When the system determines that a forward collision is probable, the driver will be provided with audible and visual warnings as well as a possible haptic warning in the form of a brake jerk.

If the driver does not take action based upon these progressive warnings, then the system will provide a limited level of active braking to help slow the vehicle and mitigate the potential forward collision. If the driver reacts to the warnings by braking and the system determines that the driver intends to avoid the collision by braking but has not applied sufficient brake force, the system will compensate and provide additional brake force as required.

If a FCW with Mitigation event begins at a speed below 32 mph (52 km/h), the system may provide the maximum braking possible to mitigate the potential forward collision. If the Forward Collision Warning with Mitigation event stops the vehicle completely, the system will hold the vehicle at standstill for two seconds and then release the brakes.

# !BRAKE!

0616123823US


#### FCW Message

When the system determines a collision with the vehicle in front of you is no longer probable, the warning message will be deactivated.

#### NOTE:

- The minimum speed for FCW activation is 3 mph (5 km/h).
- The FCW alerts may be triggered on objects other than vehicles such as guard rails or sign posts based on the course prediction. This is expected and is a part of normal FCW activation and functionality.
- It is unsafe to test the FCW system. To prevent such misuse of the system, after four Active Braking events within a key cycle, the Active Braking portion of FCW will be deactivated until the next key cycle.

- ❑ The FCW system is intended for on-road use only. If the vehicle is taken off-road, the FCW system should be deactivated to prevent unnecessary warnings to the surroundings.
- ❑ FCW may not react to irrelevant objects such as overhead objects, ground reflections, objects not in the path of the vehicle, stationary objects that are far away, oncoming traffic, or leading vehicles with the same or higher rate of speed.
- ❑ “FCW will be disabled like ACC, with the unavailable screens.

 **WARNING!**

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) is not intended to avoid a collision on its own, nor can FCW detect every type of potential collision. The driver has the responsibility to avoid a collision by controlling the vehicle via braking and steering. Failure to follow this warning could lead to serious injury or death.

### Turning FCW On or Off

The FCW button is located in the Uconnect display in the control settings. Refer to

“Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual for further information.

- ❑ To turn the FCW system on, press the forward collision button once to turn the system on.
- ❑ To turn the FCW system off, press the forward collision button once to turn the system off.

### NOTE:

- ❑ When the FCW is “on”, this allows the system to warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front.
- ❑ When the FCW is “off” prevents the system from warning the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front. If the FCW is set to “off”, “FCW OFF” will be displayed in the instrument cluster display.
- ❑ When FCW status is set to “Only Warning” prevents the system from providing limited active braking, or additional brake support if the driver is not braking adequately in the event of a potential frontal collision.
- ❑ When FCW status is set to “Warning and Braking” this allows the system to warn the driver of a possible collision with the

vehicle in front using audible/visual warnings and it applies autonomous braking.

- ❑ The system will retain the last setting selected by the driver after ignition shutdown.

### FCW Braking Status And Sensitivity

The FCW sensitivity and Active Braking status are programmable through the Uconnect System. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner's Manual for further information.

- ❑ Far
  - ❑ When the sensitivity of FCW is set to the “Far” setting and the system status is “Warning and Braking”, this allows the system to warn the driver of a possible more distant collisions with the vehicle in front using audible/visual warnings.
  - ❑ More cautious drivers that do not mind frequent warnings may prefer this setting.
- ❑ Medium
  - ❑ When the sensitivity of FCW is set to the “Medium” setting and the system status is “Warning and Braking”, this



allows the system to warn the driver of a possible collision with the vehicle in front using audible/visual warnings.

□ Near

- When the sensitivity of FCW is set to the “Near” setting and the system status is “Warning and Braking”, this allows the system to warn the driver of a possible closer collisions with the vehicle in front using audible/visual warnings.
- This setting provides less reaction time than the “Far” and “Medium” settings, which allows for a more dynamic driving experience.
- More dynamic or aggressive drivers that want to avoid frequent warnings may prefer this setting.

### **FCW Limited Warning**

If the instrument cluster displays “ACC/FCW Limited Functionality” or “ACC/FCW Limited Functionality Clean Front Windshield” momentarily, there may be a condition that limits FCW functionality. Although the vehicle is still drivable under normal conditions, the active braking may not be fully available. Once the condition that limited

the system performance is no longer present, the system will return to its full performance state. If the problem persists, see an authorized dealer.

### **Service FCW Warning**

If the system turns off, and the instrument cluster displays:

- ACC/FCW Unavailable Service Required
- Cruise/FCW Unavailable Service Required

This indicates there is an internal system fault. Although the vehicle is still drivable under normal conditions, have the system checked by an authorized dealer.

### **General Information**

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.

2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### **NOTE:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

### **Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) will warn the driver of a low tire pressure based on the vehicle recommended cold placard pressure.

### **NOTE:**

The TPMS Warning Light will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color, or the Uconnect radio will display a TPMS message, when this occurs you must increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the TPMS Warning Light to turn off.

The tire pressure will vary with temperature by about 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (6.5°C). This means that when the outside temperature decreases, the tire pressure will decrease. Tire pressure should always be set based on cold inflation tire pressure. This is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after a three hour period. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall. Refer to “Tires” in “Servicing And Maintenance” for information on how to properly inflate the vehicle’s tires. The tire pressure will also increase as the vehicle is driven - this is normal and there should be no adjustment for this increased pressure.

The TPMS will warn the driver of a low tire pressure if the tire pressure falls below the low-pressure warning limit for any reason, including low temperature effects and natural pressure loss through the tire.

The TPMS will continue to warn the driver of low tire pressure as long as the condition exists, and will not turn off until the tire pressure is at or above the recommended cold placard pressure. Once the low TPMS Warning Light illuminates, you must

increase the tire pressure to the recommended cold placard pressure in order for the TPMS Warning Light to turn off. The system will automatically update and the TPMS Warning Light will turn off once the system receives the updated tire pressures. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

**NOTE:**

When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (28 kPa) above the recommended cold placard pressure in order to turn the TPMS Warning Light off.

For example, your vehicle may have a recommended cold (parked for more than three hours) placard pressure of 30 psi (207 kPa). If the ambient temperature is 68°F (20°C) and the measured tire pressure is 27 psi (186 kPa), a temperature drop to 20°F (-7°C) will decrease the tire pressure to approximately 23 psi (158 kPa). This tire pressure is sufficiently low enough to turn on the TPMS Warning Light. Driving the vehicle may cause the tire pressure to rise to approximately 27 psi (186 kPa), but the TPMS Warning Light will still be on. In this situa-

tion, the TPMS Warning Light will turn off only after the tires are inflated to the vehicle’s recommended cold placard pressure value.



**CAUTION!**

- The TPMS has been optimized for the original equipment tires and wheels. TPMS pressures and warning have been established for the tire size equipped on your vehicle. Undesirable system operation or sensor damage may result when using replacement equipment that is not of the same size, type, and/or style. Aftermarket wheels can cause sensor damage.
- Using aftermarket tire sealants may cause the Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) sensor to become inoperable. After using an aftermarket tire sealant it is recommended that you take your vehicle to an authorized dealership to have your sensor function checked.
- After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the TPMS sensor.



**NOTE:**

- The TPMS is not intended to replace normal tire care and maintenance or to provide warning of a tire failure or condition.
- If your vehicle is not equipped with the Tire Fill Alert feature the TPMS should not be used as a tire pressure gauge while adjusting your tire pressure.
- Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.
- The TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure using an accurate tire pressure gauge, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS Warning Light.
- Seasonal temperature changes will affect tire pressure, and the TPMS will monitor the actual tire pressure in the tire.



**Example: Tire Pressure Monitor Display**

The Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to monitor tire pressure levels. Sensors, mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem, transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:**

It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPMS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four tire pressure monitoring sensors
- Various tire pressure monitoring system messages, which display in the instrument cluster
- Tire Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light

## Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings



The "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will illuminate in the instrument cluster and a chime will sound when tire pressure is low in one or more of the four active road tires. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color. An "Inflate to XX" message will also be displayed.



Example: Low Tire Pressure Display

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with a low pressure condition (those in a different color in the instrument cluster graphic) to the vehicle's recommended cold placard pressure inflation value as shown in the "Inflate to XX" message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system will automatically update, the graphic display in the instrument cluster will return to its original color, and the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will turn off. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

### NOTE:

When filling warm tires, the tire pressure may need to be increased up to an additional 4 psi (28 kPa) above the recommended cold placard pressure in order to turn the Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light off.

### Service TPMS Warning

If a system fault is detected, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM"

message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will no longer flash, and the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer display, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.



A system fault may occur due to an incorrect TPM sensor location condition. When a system fault occurs due to an incorrect TPM sensor location, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. The system fault will also sound a chime. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "Tire Pressure Temporarily Unavailable" message in place of the tire pressure display screen. If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "Tire Pressure Monitoring Telltale Light" will no longer flash and the tire pressure display screen will be displayed showing the tire pressure values the correct locations.

#### **Vehicles With Non Matching Full Size Spare Or Compact Spare**

- The non matching full size spare or compact spare tire does not have a TPM sensor. Therefore, the TPMS will not monitor the pressure in the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire.
- If you install the non matching full size spare or compact spare tire in place of a road tire that has a pressure below the low-pressure warning limit, upon the next ignition switch cycle, the TPM Telltale

Light and a "LOW TIRE" message will remain ON and a chime will sound. In addition, the graphic in the instrument cluster will still display a pressure value in a different color and an "Inflate to XX" message.

- After driving the vehicle for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h), the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- For each subsequent ignition switch cycle, a chime will sound, the TPM Telltale Light will flash on and off for 75 seconds and then remain on solid, and the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value.
- Once you repair or replace the original road tire and reinstall it on the vehicle in place of the non matching full size spare or compact spare, the TPMS will update automatically. In addition, the TPM Tell-

tale Light will turn OFF and the graphic in the instrument cluster will display a new pressure value instead of dashes (- -), as long as no tire pressure is below the low-pressure warning limit in any of the four active road tires. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 20 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TPMS to receive this information.

#### **Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TTPMS)**

The Trailer Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TTPMS) is a feature that will display the trailer tire pressure values and warn the driver of a low trailer tire pressure, based on the drivers set target tire pressure value, through the Instrument Cluster (IC).

The TTPMS monitors the pressure of each tire and warns the driver, through the IC, when either a low tire pressure condition or a TPM sensor or system malfunction condition exists. The IC will display the actual tire pressure or dashes for each of the trailer tires in the correct trailer position, based on trailer configuration.

The TTPMS consist of the following components:

- Trailer Receiver Module
- Trailer Interface Module
- Two to twelve tire pressure monitoring sensors depending on trailer configuration

The TTPMS is configured though the trailer settings menu in the Uconnect system by selecting the desired trailer number (up to four trailers can be configured), the number of axles (1 - 3), the number of trailer tires (2, 4, 6, 8, or 12), and the set trailer tire pressure. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### **Tire Pressure Monitoring Low Pressure Warnings**

When a tire pressure low in one or more of the active road tires is detected a chime will sound. In addition, the instrument cluster will display a graphic showing the pressure values of each tire with the low tire pressure values in a different color. An “Inflate to XXX” message will also be displayed.

#### **NOTE:**

“XXX” = TPM trailer tire target pressure value programmed by the customer

Should this occur, you should stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires with a low pressure condition (those in a different color in the instrument cluster graphic) to the customer programmed target tire pressure value as shown in the “Inflate to XXX” message. Once the system receives the updated tire pressures, the system will automatically update the graphic display in the instrument cluster will return to it’s original color. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 10 minutes above 15 mph (24 km/h) in order for the TTPMS to receive the updated information.

### **Service TTPMS Warning**

If a system fault is detected, the system fault will sound a chime and the instrument cluster will display a “Trailer Tire Pressure System Service Required” message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

Once the system fault is corrected the “Trailer Tire Pressure System Service Required” message will no longer be displayed and the dashes will be replaced by pressure values. The vehicle may need to be driven for up to 10 minutes above 15 mph

(24 km/h) in order for the TTPMS to receive the updated information.

### **Trailer Tire Pressure System Not Configured**

A “Trailer Tire Pressure System Not Configured” message will be displayed in the Instrument Cluster when a trailer number is selected that does not have configuration values entered for the (Number of Tires, Number of Axles, SET Target Tire Pressure, trailer TPM sensor ID's).

To correct this condition the (Number of Tires, Number of Axles, and SET Target Tire Pressure) values must be entered in the radio for the trailer number selected. The trailer sensors must also be paired to the trailer. Refer to the “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### **Trailer Sensors Detected Do Not Match Active Trailer**

The “Trailer Sensors Detected Do Not Match Active Trailer” message will be displayed in the Instrument Cluster when the trailer sensors being received by the TTPM module do not match the trailer sensors paired to the current trailer number selected. This message will be displayed when the sensors being received completely match the sensors



paired to another trailer number configured in the TTPM module.

To correct this condition, the correct trailer number must be selected in the radio. Refer to the “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” for further information.

### Tire Fill Alert

This feature notifies the user when the placard tire pressure is attained while inflating or deflating the tire.

The customer may choose to disable or enable the Tire Fill Alert feature through use of the customer settings in the radio.

#### NOTE:

- Only one tire can be filled at a time when using the Tire Fill Alert system.
- The Tire Fill Alert feature cannot be entered if an existing TPM system fault is set to “active” or if the system is in deactivation mode (if equipped).

The system will be activated when the TPM receiver module detects a change in tire pressure. The ignition must be in the RUN mode, with the transmission in PARK (P).

#### NOTE:

It is not required to have the engine running to enter Tire Fill Alert mode.

The hazard lamps will come on to confirm the vehicle is in Tire Fill Alert mode.

When Tire Fill Alert Mode is entered, the tire pressure display screen will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

#### Operation:

- The horn will chirp to let the user know when to stop filling the tire, when it reaches recommended pressure.
- The horn will chirp three times if the tire is over filled and will continue to chirp every five seconds if the user continues to inflate the tire.
- The horn will chirp once again when enough air is let out to reach proper inflation level.
- The horn will also chirp three times if the tire is then under-inflated and will continue to chirp every five seconds if the user continues to deflate the tire.

### Selectable Tire Fill Alert (STFA)

The Selectable Tire Fill Alert (STFA) system is an optional feature that is included as part of the normal Tire Fill Alert system. The system is designed to allow the customer to select a pressure to inflate or deflate the vehicle’s front and rear axle tires to and to provide feedback to the customer while inflating or deflating the vehicle’s tires.

In the Selectable Tire Fill Alert customer settings menu in the radio, the customer will be able to select a pressure setting for both the front and rear axle tire pressures by scrolling through a pressure range from XX to 15 psi in 1 psi increments for each axle setting. XX = the vehicle’s cold placard pressure values for the front and rear axles as shown on the vehicle placard pressure label.

The customer may also store the pressure values chosen for each axle in the radio as a preset pressure. The customer will be allowed to store up to two sets of preset values in the radio for the front and rear axle pressure values.

Once the customer selects the tire pressures for the front and rear axles that they want to inflate or deflate to, they can begin inflating or deflating one tire at a time.

**NOTE:**

The STFA system will only support inflating or deflating one tire at a time.

The system will be activated when the TPM receiver module detects a change in tire pressure. The ignition must be in the RUN mode, with the transmission in PARK (P).

The hazard lamps will come on to confirm the vehicle is in Tire Fill Alert mode.

When Tire Fill Alert Mode is entered, the tire pressure display screen will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Operation:**

- The horn will chirp once when the selected pressure is reached to let the user know when to stop inflating or deflating the tire.
- The horn will chirp three times if the tire is over inflated or over deflated and will continue to chirp every five seconds if the user continues to inflate or deflate the tire.
- The horn will chirp once again when enough air is added or removed to reach proper selected pressure level.

**Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS)  
3500 Series Trucks**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS).

The Tire Pressure Information System (TPIS) uses wireless technology with wheel rim mounted electronic sensors to transmit tire pressure levels. Sensors mounted to each wheel as part of the valve stem transmit tire pressure readings to the receiver module.

**NOTE:**

It is particularly important for you to check the tire pressure in all of the tires on your vehicle monthly and to maintain the proper pressure.

The TPIS consists of the following components:

- Receiver module
- Four TPM sensors (Single Rear Wheel (SRW) applications)
- Six TPM sensors (Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) applications)
- Pressure display in the instrument cluster

The TPIS system will display all four (Single Rear Wheel (SRW) applications) or six (Dual

Rear Wheel (DRW) applications) tire pressure values in the instrument cluster display.

If a system fault is detected, the instrument cluster will display a "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message for a minimum of five seconds and then display dashes (- -) in place of the pressure value to indicate which sensor is not being received.

If the ignition switch is cycled, this sequence will repeat, providing the system fault still exists. If the system fault no longer exists, the "SERVICE TPM SYSTEM" message will no longer be displayed, and a pressure value will display in place of the dashes. A system fault can occur due to any of the following:

- Signal interference due to electronic devices or driving next to facilities emitting the same radio frequencies as the TPM sensors.
- Installing aftermarket window tinting that contains materials that may block radio wave signals.
- Accumulation of snow or ice around the wheels or wheel housings.
- Using tire chains on the vehicle.
- Using wheels/tires not equipped with TPM sensors.



## General Information

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules and RSS 210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

## OCCUPANT RESTRAINT SYSTEMS

Some of the most important safety features in your vehicle are the restraint systems:

### Occupant Restraint Systems Features

- Seat Belt Systems
- Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS) Air Bags
- Child Restraints

Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask an authorized dealer.

### Important Safety Precautions

Please pay close attention to the information in this section. It tells you how to use your restraint system properly, to keep you and your passengers as safe as possible.

Here are some simple steps you can take to minimize the risk of harm from a deploying air bag:

1. Children 12 years old and under should always ride buckled up in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.
2. A child who is not big enough to wear the vehicle seat belt properly (Refer to “Child Restraints” in this section for further information) must be secured in the appropriate child restraint or belt-positioning booster seat in a rear seating position.
3. If a child from 2 to 12 years old (not in a rear-facing child restraint) must ride in the front passenger seat, move the seat

as far back as possible and use the proper child restraint (Refer to “Child Restraints” in this section for further information).

4. Never allow children to slide the shoulder belt behind them or under their arm.
5. You should read the instructions provided with your child restraint to make sure that you are using it properly.
6. All occupants should always wear their lap and shoulder belts properly.
7. The driver and front passenger seats should be moved back as far as practical to allow the front air bags room to inflate.
8. Do not lean against the door or window. If your vehicle has side air bags, and deployment occurs, the side air bags will inflate forcefully into the space between occupants and the door and occupants could be injured.
9. If the air bag system in this vehicle needs to be modified to accommodate a disabled person, refer to the “Customer Assistance” section for customer service contact information.



## WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat of a vehicle. Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat. If the vehicle does not have a rear seat, do not transport a rear-facing child restraint in that vehicle.

## Seat Belt Systems


Buckle up even though you are an excellent driver, even on short trips. Someone on the road may be a poor driver and could cause a collision that includes you. This can happen far away from home or on your own street.

Research has shown that seat belts save lives, and they can reduce the seriousness of injuries in a collision. Some of the worst injuries happen when people are thrown from the vehicle. Seat belts reduce the possibility of ejection and the risk of injury caused by

striking the inside of the vehicle. Everyone in a motor vehicle should be belted at all times.

## Enhanced Seat Belt Use Reminder System (BeltAlert)

### Driver And Passenger BeltAlert — If Equipped

 BeltAlert is a feature intended to remind the driver and outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) to buckle their seat belts. The Belt Alert feature is active whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position.

### Initial Indication

If the driver is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position, a chime will signal for a few seconds. If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled when the ignition switch is first in the START or ON/RUN position the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until both outboard front seat belts are buckled. The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when an outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied.

## BeltAlert Warning Sequence

The BeltAlert warning sequence is activated when the vehicle is moving above a specified vehicle speed range and the driver or outboard front seat passenger is unbuckled (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) (the outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied). The BeltAlert warning sequence starts by blinking the Seat Belt Reminder Light and sounding an intermittent chime. Once the BeltAlert warning sequence has completed, the Seat Belt Reminder Light will remain on until the seat belts are buckled. The BeltAlert warning sequence may repeat based on vehicle speed until the driver and occupied outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled. The driver should instruct all occupants to buckle their seat belts.

### Change Of Status

If the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) unbuckles their seat belt while the vehicle is traveling, the BeltAlert warning sequence will begin until the seat belts are buckled again.



The outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert is not active when the outboard front passenger seat is unoccupied. BeltAlert may be triggered when an animal or other items are placed on the outboard front passenger seat or when the seat is folded flat (if equipped). It is recommended that pets be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts, and cargo is properly stowed.

BeltAlert can be activated or deactivated by an authorized dealer. FCA US LLC does not recommend deactivating BeltAlert.

**NOTE:**

If BeltAlert has been deactivated and the driver or outboard front seat passenger (if equipped with outboard front passenger seat BeltAlert) is unbuckled the Seat Belt Reminder Light will turn on and remain on until the driver and outboard front seat passenger seat belts are buckled.

**Lap/Shoulder Belts**

All seating positions except the Crew Cab front center seating position have combination lap/shoulder belts.

The seat belt webbing retractor will lock only during very sudden stops or collisions. This

feature allows the shoulder part of the seat belt to move freely with you under normal conditions. However, in a collision the seat belt will lock and reduce your risk of striking the inside of the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle.



**WARNING!**

- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, the air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have air bags.
- In a collision, you and your passengers can suffer much greater injuries if you are not properly buckled up. You can strike the interior of your vehicle or other passengers, or you can be thrown out of the vehicle. Always be sure you and others in your vehicle are buckled up properly.
- It is dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly. Occupants, including the driver, should always wear their seat belts whether or not an air bag is also provided at their seating position to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in the event of a crash.
- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.
- Two people should never be belted into a single seat belt. People belted together can crash into one another in a collision, hurting one another badly. Never use a lap/shoulder belt or a lap belt for more than one person, no matter what their size.

*(Continued)*



## WARNING!

- A lap belt worn too high can increase the risk of injury in a collision. The seat belt forces won't be at the strong hip and pelvic bones, but across your abdomen. Always wear the lap part of your seat belt as low as possible and keep it snug.
- A twisted seat belt may not protect you properly. In a collision, it could even cut into you. Be sure the seat belt is flat against your body, without twists. If you can't straighten a seat belt in your vehicle, take it to an authorized dealer immediately and have it fixed.
- A seat belt that is buckled into the wrong buckle will not protect you properly. The lap portion could ride too high on your body, possibly causing internal injuries. Always buckle your seat belt into the buckle nearest you.
- A seat belt that is too loose will not protect you properly. In a sudden stop, you could move too far forward, increasing the possibility of injury. Wear your seat belt snugly.

*(Continued)*



## WARNING! (Continued)

- A seat belt that is worn under your arm is dangerous. Your body could strike the inside surfaces of the vehicle in a collision, increasing head and neck injury. A seat belt worn under the arm can cause internal injuries. Ribs aren't as strong as shoulder bones. Wear the seat belt over your shoulder so that your strongest bones will take the force in a collision.
- A shoulder belt placed behind you will not protect you from injury during a collision. You are more likely to hit your head in a collision if you do not wear your shoulder belt. The lap and shoulder belt are meant to be used together.
- A frayed or torn seat belt could rip apart in a collision and leave you with no protection. Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, or loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the seat belt system. Seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision.

## Lap/Shoulder Belt Operating Instructions

1. Enter the vehicle and close the door. Sit back and adjust the seat.
2. The seat belt latch plate is above the back of the front seat, and next to your arm in the rear seat (for vehicles equipped with a rear seat). Grasp the latch plate and pull out the seat belt. Slide the latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.



**Pulling Out The Latch Plate**



- When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”



**Inserting Latch Plate Into Buckle**

- Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, tilt the latch plate and pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.



**Positioning The Lap Belt**

- Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the shoulder belt.
- To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully.

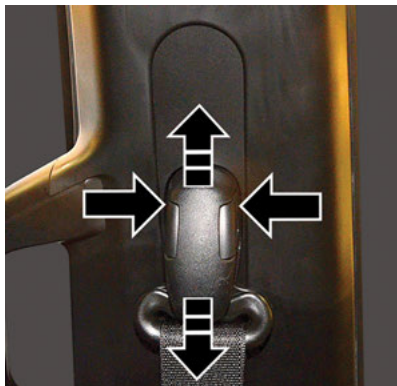
### Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting Procedure

Use the following procedure to untwist a twisted lap/shoulder belt.

- Position the latch plate as close as possible to the anchor point.
- At about 6 to 12 inches (15 to 30 cm) above the latch plate, grasp and twist the seat belt webbing 180 degrees to create a fold that begins immediately above the latch plate.
- Slide the latch plate upward over the folded webbing. The folded webbing must enter the slot at the top of the latch plate.
- Continue to slide the latch plate up until it clears the folded webbing and the seat belt is no longer twisted.

## Adjustable Upper Shoulder Belt Anchorage

In the driver and outboard front passenger seats, the top of the shoulder belt can be adjusted upward or downward to position the seat belt away from your neck. Push or squeeze the anchorage button to release the anchorage, and move it up or down to the position that serves you best.



**Adjustable Anchorage**

As a guide, if you are shorter than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a lower position, and if you are taller than average, you will prefer the shoulder belt anchorage in a higher position. After you

release the anchorage button, try to move it up or down to make sure that it is locked in position.

### **NOTE:**

The adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage is equipped with an Easy Up feature. This feature allows the shoulder belt anchorage to be adjusted in the upward position without pushing or squeezing the release button. To verify the shoulder belt anchorage is latched, pull downward on the shoulder belt anchorage until it is locked into position.



### **WARNING!**

- Wearing your seat belt incorrectly could make your injuries in a collision much worse. You might suffer internal injuries, or you could even slide out of the seat belt. Follow these instructions to wear your seat belt safely and to keep your passengers safe, too.
- Position the shoulder belt across the shoulder and chest with minimal, if any slack so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the should belt.

*(Continued)*



### **WARNING! (Continued)**

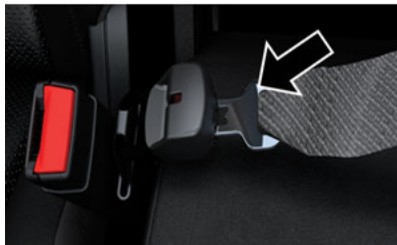
- Misadjustment of the seat belt could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash.
- Always make all seat belt height adjustments when the vehicle is stationary.

## **First Row Center Seat Belt Operating Instructions (Regular Cab Only)**

The first row center seat belt (Regular Cab only) features a seat belt with a mini-latch plate and buckle, which allows the seat belt to detach from the lower anchor when the seat is folded. The latch plate and regular latch plate can then be stored out of the way in the seat for added convenience to open up utilization of the storage areas behind the front seats when the seat is not occupied.



1. Remove the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate from its stowed position on the seat.



### Connect Mini-Latch To Mini-Buckle



### Mini-Latch And Mini-Buckle Connected

2. Grasp the mini-latch plate and pull the seat belt over the seat.
3. Route the shoulder belt to the inside of the right head restraint.
4. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the mini-latch plate into the mini-buckle until you hear a “click.”
5. Sit back in seat. Slide the regular latch plate up the webbing as far as necessary to allow the seat belt to go around your lap.
6. When the seat belt is long enough to fit, insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
7. Position the lap belt so that it is snug and lies low across your hips, below your abdomen. To remove slack in the lap belt portion, pull up on the shoulder belt. To loosen the lap belt if it is too tight, pull on the lap belt. A snug seat belt reduces the risk of sliding under the seat belt in a collision.
8. Position the shoulder belt on your chest so that it is comfortable and not resting on your neck. The retractor will withdraw any slack in the seat belt.
9. To release the seat belt, push the red button on the buckle.

10. To disengage the mini-latch plate from the mini-buckle for storage, insert the regular latch plate into the center red slot on the mini-buckle. The seat belt will automatically retract to its stowed position. If necessary, slide the latch plate down the webbing to allow the seat belt to retract fully. Insert the mini-latch plate and regular latch plate into its stowed position.



**Detaching Mini-Buckle With Seat Belt Tongue**

**WARNING!**

- ❑ If the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle are not properly connected when the seat belt is used by an occupant, the seat belt will not be able to provide proper restraint and will increase the risk of injury in a collision.
- ❑ When reattaching the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, ensure the seat belt webbing is not twisted. If the webbing is twisted, follow the preceding procedure to detach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle, untwist the webbing, and reattach the mini-latch plate and mini-buckle.

**First Row Center Lap Belt Operating Instructions — If Equipped**

The center seating position for the Crew Cab front seat has a lap belt only. To buckle the lap belt, slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click." To lengthen the lap belt, tilt the latch plate and pull.

To remove slack, pull the loose end of the webbing. Wear the lap belt snug against the hips. Sit back and upright in the seat, then adjust the seat belt as tightly as is comfortable.

**Seat Belt Extender**

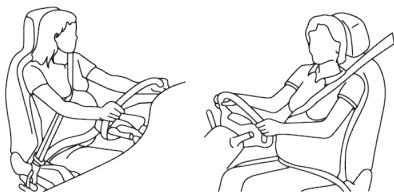
If a seat belt is not long enough to fit properly, even when the webbing is fully extended and the adjustable upper shoulder belt anchorage (if equipped) is in its lowest position, an authorized dealer can provide you with a Seat Belt Extender. The Seat Belt Extender should be used only if the existing seat belt is not long enough. When the Seat Belt Extender is not required for a different occupant, it must be removed.

**WARNING!**

- ❑ **ONLY** use a Seat Belt Extender if it is physically required in order to properly fit the original seat belt system. **DO NOT USE** the Seat Belt Extender if, when worn, the distance between the front edge of the Seat Belt Extender buckle and the center of the occupant's body is **LESS** than 6 inches.
- ❑ Using a Seat Belt Extender when not needed can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision. Only use the Seat Belt Extender when the lap belt is not long enough and only use in the recommended seating positions. Remove and store the Seat Belt Extender when not needed.



## Seat Belts And Pregnant Women



### Pregnant Women And Seat Belts

Seat belts must be worn by all occupants including pregnant women: the risk of injury in the event of an accident is reduced for the mother and the unborn child if they are wearing a seat belt.

Position the lap belt snug and low below the abdomen and across the strong bones of the hips. Place the shoulder belt across the chest and away from the neck. Never place the shoulder belt behind the back or under the arm.

## Seat Belt Pretensioner — If Equipped

### 3500 Models Only

The front outboard seat belt system may be equipped with pretensioning devices that are designed to remove slack from the seat belt in the event of a collision. These devices may improve the performance of the seat belt by removing slack from the seat belt early in a collision. Pretensioners work for all size occupants, including those in child restraints.

#### NOTE:

These devices are not a substitute for proper seat belt placement by the occupant. The seat belt still must be worn snugly and positioned properly.

The pretensioners are triggered by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC). Like the air bags, the pretensioners are single use items. A deployed pretensioner or a deployed air bag must be replaced immediately.

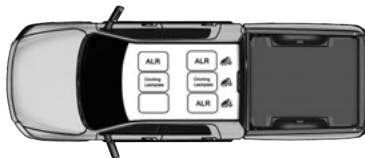
## Energy Management Feature — If Equipped

### 3500 Models Only

The front outboard seat belt system may be equipped with an Energy Management feature that may help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a collision. The seat belt system has a retractor assembly that is designed to release webbing in a controlled manner.

## Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR) — If Equipped

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions may be equipped with a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) which is used to secure a child restraint system. For additional information, refer to “Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt” under the “Child Restraints” section of this manual. The figure below illustrates the locking feature for each seating position.



### Crew Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

If the passenger seating position is equipped with an ALR and is being used for normal usage, only pull the seat belt webbing out far enough to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section so as to not activate the ALR. If the ALR is activated, you will hear a clicking sound as the seat belt retracts. Allow the webbing to retract completely in this case and then carefully pull out only the amount of webbing necessary to comfortably wrap around the occupant's mid-section. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."



### Regular Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

In Automatic Locking Mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The seat belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. Use the Automatic Locking Mode anytime a child restraint is installed in a seating position that has a seat belt with this feature. Children 12 years old and under should always be properly restrained in the rear seat of a vehicle with a rear seat.



### WARNING!

- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat of a vehicle. Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat. If the vehicle does not have a rear seat, do not transport a rear-facing child restraint in that vehicle.



**How To Engage The Automatic Locking Mode**

1. Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.
2. Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire seat belt is extracted.
3. Allow the seat belt to retract. As the seat belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking Mode.

**How To Disengage The Automatic Locking Mode**

Unbuckle the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the Automatic Locking Mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

**WARNING!**

- The seat belt assembly must be replaced if the switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) feature or any other seat belt function is not working properly when checked according to the procedures in the Service Manual.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**


- Failure to replace the seat belt assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.
- Do not use the Automatic Locking Mode to restrain occupants who are wearing the seat belt or children who are using booster seats. The locked mode is only used to install rear-facing or forward-facing child restraints that have a harness for restraining the child.

**Supplemental Restraint Systems (SRS)**


Some of the safety features described in this section may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask an authorized dealer.

The air bag system must be ready to protect you in a collision. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and interconnecting wiring associated with the electrical Air Bag System Components. Your vehicle may be equipped with the following Air Bag System Components:

**Air Bag System Components**

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Supplemental Side Air Bags — If Equipped
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

**Air Bag Warning Light**

-  The ORC monitors the readiness of the electronic parts of the air bag system whenever the ignition switch is in the START or ON/RUN position. If the ignition switch is in the OFF position or in the ACC position, the air bag system is not on and the air bags will not inflate.

The ORC contains a backup power supply system that may deploy the air bag system even if the battery loses power or it becomes disconnected prior to deployment.


The ORC turns on the Air Bag Warning Light in the instrument panel for approximately four to eight seconds for a self-check when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position. After the self-check, the Air Bag Warning Light will turn off. If the ORC detects a malfunction in any part of the system, it turns on the Air Bag Warning Light, either momentarily or continuously. A single chime will sound to alert you if the light comes on again after initial startup.

The ORC also includes diagnostics that will illuminate the instrument panel Air Bag Warning Light if a malfunction is detected that could affect the air bag system. The diagnostics also record the nature of the malfunction. While the air bag system is designed to be maintenance free, if any of the following occurs, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

- The Air Bag Warning Light does not come on during the four to eight seconds when the ignition switch is first in the ON/RUN position.
- The Air Bag Warning Light remains on after the four to eight-second interval.
- The Air Bag Warning Light comes on intermittently or remains on while driving.

**NOTE:**

If the speedometer, tachometer, or any engine related gauges are not working, the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) may also be disabled. In this condition the air bags may not be ready to inflate for your protection. Have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.

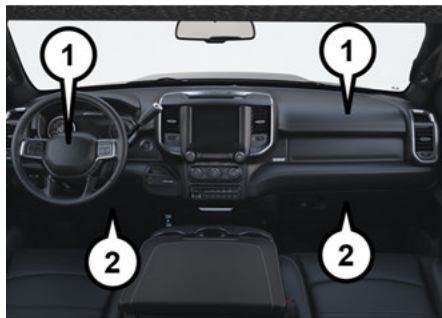
 **WARNING!**

Ignoring the Air Bag Warning Light in your instrument panel could mean you won't have the air bag system to protect you in a collision. If the light does not come on as a bulb check when the ignition is first turned on, stays on after you start the vehicle, or if it comes on as you drive, have an authorized dealer service the air bag system immediately.



## Front Air Bags

This vehicle has front air bags and lap/shoulder belts for both the driver and front passenger. The front air bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint systems. The driver front air bag is mounted in the center of the steering wheel. The passenger front air bag is mounted in the instrument panel, above the glove compartment. The words “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG” are embossed on the air bag covers.



### Front Air Bag/Knee Bolster Locations

- 1 — Driver And Passenger Front Air Bags
- 2 — Driver And Passenger Knee Impact Bolsters



### WARNING!

- Being too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel during front air bag deployment could cause serious injury, including death. Air bags need room to inflate. Sit back, comfortably extending your arms to reach the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat of a vehicle. Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat. If the vehicle does not have a rear seat, do not transport a rear-facing child restraint in that vehicle.

## Driver And Passenger Front Air Bag Features

The Advanced Front Air Bag system has multistage driver and front passenger air bags. This system provides output appropriate to the severity and type of collision as determined by the Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC), which may receive information from the front impact sensors (if equipped) or other system components.

The first stage inflator is triggered immediately during an impact that requires air bag deployment. A low energy output is used in less severe collisions. A higher energy output is used for more severe collisions.

This vehicle may be equipped with a driver and/or front passenger seat belt buckle switch that detects whether the driver or front passenger seat belt is buckled. The seat belt buckle switch may adjust the inflation rate of the Advanced Front Air Bags.



### WARNING!

- No objects should be placed over or near the air bag on the instrument panel or steering wheel because any such objects could cause harm if the vehicle is in a collision severe enough to cause the air bag to inflate.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Do not put anything on or around the air bag covers or attempt to open them manually. You may damage the air bags and you could be injured because the air bags may no longer be functional. The protective covers for the air bag cushions are designed to open only when the air bags are inflating.
- Relying on the air bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The air bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, air bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belts even though you have air bags.

## Front Air Bag Operation

Front Air Bags are designed to provide additional protection by supplementing the seat belts. Front air bags are not expected to reduce the risk of injury in rear, side, or roll-over collisions. The front air bags will not deploy in all frontal collisions, including some that may produce substantial vehicle damage — for example, some pole collisions, truck underrides, and angle offset collisions.

On the other hand, depending on the type and location of impact, front air bags may deploy in crashes with little vehicle front-end damage but that produce a severe initial deceleration.

Because air bag sensors measure vehicle deceleration over time, vehicle speed and damage by themselves are not good indicators of whether or not an air bag should have deployed.

Seat belts are necessary for your protection in all collisions, and also are needed to help keep you in position, away from an inflating air bag.

When the ORC detects a collision requiring the front air bags, it signals the inflator units. A large quantity of non-toxic gas is generated to inflate the front air bags.

The steering wheel hub trim cover and the upper passenger side of the instrument panel separate and fold out of the way as the air bags inflate to their full size. The front air bags fully inflate in less time than it takes to blink your eyes. The front air bags then quickly deflate while helping to restrain the driver and front passenger.



## Knee Impact Bolsters

The Knee Impact Bolsters help protect the knees of the driver and front passenger, and position the front occupants for improved interaction with the front air bags.



### WARNING!

- ❑ Do not drill, cut, or tamper with the knee impact bolsters in any way.
- ❑ Do not mount any accessories to the knee impact bolsters such as alarm lights, stereos, citizen band radios, etc.

## Supplemental Side Air Bags

### Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs). If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs), please refer to the information below.

Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bags (SABs) are located in the outboard side of the front seats. The SABs are marked with “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG” on a label or on the seat trim on the outboard side of the seats.



### Supplemental Seat-Mounted Side Air Bag Label

The SABs (if equipped with SABs) may help to reduce the risk of occupant injury during certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

When the SAB deploys, it opens the seam on the outboard side of the seatback's trim cover. The inflating SAB deploys through the seat seam into the space between the occupant and the door. The SAB moves at a very high speed and with such a high force that it could injure occupants if they are not seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SAB inflates. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.



### WARNING!

Do not use accessory seat covers or place objects between you and the Side Air Bags; the performance could be adversely affected and/or objects could be pushed into you, causing serious injury.

## Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs). If your vehicle is equipped with Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs), please refer to the information below.

Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtains (SABICs) are located above the side windows. The trim covering the SABICs is labeled “SRS AIRBAG” or “AIRBAG.”



Supplemental Side Air Bag Inflatable Curtain (SABIC) Label Location

SABICs (if equipped with SABICs) may help reduce the risk of head and other injuries to front and rear seat outboard occupants in certain side impacts, in addition to the injury reduction potential provided by the seat belts and body structure.

The SABIC deploys downward, covering the side windows. An inflating SABIC pushes the outside edge of the headliner out of the way and covers the window. The SABICs inflate with enough force to injure occupants if they are not belted and seated properly, or if items are positioned in the area where the SABICs inflate. Children are at an even greater risk of injury from a deploying air bag.

The SABICs (if equipped with SABICs) may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain side impact events.



### WARNING!

- Do not mount equipment, or stack luggage or other cargo up high enough to block the deployment of the SABICs. The trim covering above the side windows where the SABIC and its deployment path are located should remain free from any obstructions.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- In order for the SABICs to work as intended, do not install any accessory items in your vehicle which could alter the roof. Do not add an aftermarket sunroof to your vehicle. Do not add roof racks that require permanent attachments (bolts or screws) for installation on the vehicle roof. Do not drill into the roof of the vehicle for any reason.

## Side Impacts

The Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain side impacts. The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular impact event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. The side impact sensors aid the ORC in determining the appropriate response to impact events. The system is calibrated to deploy the Side Air Bags on the impact side of the vehicle during impacts that require Side Air Bag occupant protection. In side impacts, the Side Air Bags deploy independently; a left side impact deploys the left Side Air Bags only and a right-side impact deploys the right Side Air Bags only. Vehicle



damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all side collisions, including some collisions at certain angles, or some side collisions that do not impact the area of the passenger compartment. The Side Air Bags may deploy during angled or offset frontal collisions where the front air bags deploy.

Side Air Bags are a supplement to the seat belt restraint system. Side Air Bags deploy in less time than it takes to blink your eyes.



### WARNING!

- Occupants, including children, who are up against or very close to Side Air Bags can be seriously injured or killed. Occupants, including children, should never lean on or sleep against the door, side windows, or area where the side air bags inflate, even if they are in an infant or child restraint.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Seat belts (and child restraints where appropriate) are necessary for your protection in all collisions. They also help keep you in position, away from an inflating Side Air Bag. To get the best protection from the Side Air Bags, occupants must wear their seat belts properly and sit upright with their backs against the seats. Children must be properly restrained in a child restraint or booster seat that is appropriate for the size of the child.



### WARNING!

- Side Air Bags need room to inflate. Do not lean against the door or window. Sit upright in the center of the seat.
- Being too close to the Side Air Bags during deployment could cause you to be severely injured or killed.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Relying on the Side Air Bags alone could lead to more severe injuries in a collision. The Side Air Bags work with your seat belt to restrain you properly. In some collisions, Side Air Bags won't deploy at all. Always wear your seat belt even though you have Side Air Bags.

### NOTE:

Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.

### Rollover Events (If Equipped With Rollover Sensing)

Side Air Bags are designed to activate in certain rollover events (if equipped with rollover sensing). The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) determines whether the deployment of the Side Air Bags in a particular rollover event is appropriate, based on the severity and type of collision. Vehicle damage by itself is not a good indicator of whether or not Side Air Bags should have deployed.

The Side Air Bags will not deploy in all rollover events. The rollover sensing system determines if a rollover event may be in progress and whether deployment is appropriate. In the event the vehicle experiences a rollover or near rollover event, and deployment of the Side Air Bags is appropriate, the rollover sensing system will also deploy the seat belt pretensioners (if equipped with pretensioners) on both sides of the vehicle.


The SABICs may help reduce the risk of partial or complete ejection of vehicle occupants through side windows in certain rollover or side impact events.

### Air Bag System Components

#### NOTE:

The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) monitors the internal circuits and intercon-

necting wiring associated with electrical Air Bag System Components listed below:

- Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC)
- Air Bag Warning Light 
- Steering Wheel and Column
- Instrument Panel
- Knee Impact Bolsters
- Driver and Front Passenger Air Bags
- Seat Belt Buckle Switch
- Supplemental Side Air Bags — If Equipped
- Front and Side Impact Sensors — If Equipped
- Seat Belt Pretensioners — If Equipped

### If A Deployment Occurs

The front air bags are designed to deflate immediately after deployment.

#### NOTE:

Front and/or side air bags will not deploy in all collisions. This does not mean something is wrong with the air bag system.

If you do have a collision which deploys the air bags, any or all of the following may occur:

- The air bag material may sometimes cause abrasions and/or skin reddening to the occupants as the air bags deploy and unfold. The abrasions are similar to friction rope burns or those you might get sliding along a carpet or gymnasium floor. They are not caused by contact with chemicals. They are not permanent and normally heal quickly. However, if you haven't healed significantly within a few days, or if you have any blistering, see your doctor immediately.
- As the air bags deflate, you may see some smoke-like particles. The particles are a normal by-product of the process that generates the non-toxic gas used for air bag inflation. These airborne particles may irritate the skin, eyes, nose, or throat. If you have skin or eye irritation, rinse the area with cool water. For nose or throat irritation, move to fresh air. If the irritation continues, see your doctor. If these particles settle on your clothing, follow the garment manufacturer's instructions for cleaning.



Do not drive your vehicle after the air bags have deployed. If you are involved in another collision, the air bags will not be in place to protect you.



### WARNING!

Deployed air bags and seat belt pretensioners cannot protect you in another collision. Have the air bags, seat belt pretensioners, and the seat belt retractor assemblies replaced by an authorized dealer immediately. Also, have the Occupant Restraint Controller System serviced as well.

### NOTE:

- Air bag covers may not be obvious in the interior trim, but they will open during air bag deployment.
- After any collision, the vehicle should be taken to an authorized dealer immediately.

### Enhanced Accident Response System

In the event of an impact, if the communication network remains intact, and the power remains intact, depending on the nature of the event, the ORC will determine whether to

have the Enhanced Accident Response System perform the following functions:

- Cut off fuel to the engine (If Equipped)
- Cut off battery power to the electric motor (If Equipped)
- Flash hazard lights as long as the battery has power
- Turn on the interior lights, which remain on as long as the battery has power or for 15 minutes from the intervention of the Enhanced Accident Response System.
- Unlock the power door locks.

Your vehicle may also be designed to perform any of these other functions in response to the Enhanced Accident Response System:

- Turn off the Fuel Filter Heater, Turn off the HVAC Blower Motor, Close the HVAC Circulation Door
- Cut off battery power to the:
  - Engine
  - Electric Motor (if equipped)
  - Electric power steering
  - Brake booster

- Electric park brake
- Automatic transmission gear selector
- Horn
- Front wiper
- Headlamp washer pump

### NOTE:

After an accident, remember to cycle the ignition to the STOP (OFF/LOCK) position and remove the key from the ignition switch to avoid draining the battery. Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine. If there are no fuel leaks or damage to the vehicle electrical devices (e.g. headlights) after an accident, reset the system by following the procedure described below. If you have any doubt, contact an authorized dealer.

### Enhanced Accident Response System Reset Procedure

In order to reset the Enhanced Accident Response System functions after an event, the ignition switch must be changed from ignition START or ON/RUN to ignition OFF.

Carefully check the vehicle for fuel leaks in the engine compartment and on the ground near the engine compartment and fuel tank before resetting the system and starting the engine.

## Maintaining Your Air Bag System



### WARNING!

- Modifications to any part of the air bag system could cause it to fail when you need it. You could be injured if the air bag system is not there to protect you. Do not modify the components or wiring, including adding any kind of badges or stickers to the steering wheel hub trim cover or the upper passenger side of the instrument panel. Do not modify the front bumper, vehicle body structure, or add aftermarket side steps or running boards.
- It is dangerous to try to repair any part of the air bag system yourself. Be sure to tell anyone who works on your vehicle that it has an air bag system.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Do not attempt to modify any part of your air bag system. The air bag may inflate accidentally or may not function properly if modifications are made. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer for any air bag system service. If your seat, including your trim cover and cushion, needs to be serviced in any way (including removal or loosening/tightening of seat attachment bolts), take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. Only manufacturer approved seat accessories may be used. If it is necessary to modify the air bag system for persons with disabilities, contact an authorized dealer.

## Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short

period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

### NOTE:

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the



vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

### Child Restraints

Everyone in your vehicle needs to be buckled up at all times, including babies and children. Every state in the United States, and every Canadian province, requires that small children ride in proper restraint systems. This is the law, and you can be prosecuted for ignoring it.

Children 12 years or younger should ride properly buckled up in a rear seat, if available. According to crash statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seats rather than in the front.



### WARNING!

In a collision, an unrestrained child can become a projectile inside the vehicle. The force required to hold even an infant on your lap could become so great that you could not hold the child, no matter how strong you are. The child and others could be badly injured or killed. Any child riding in your vehicle should be in a proper restraint for the child's size.

There are different sizes and types of restraints for children from newborn size to the child almost large enough for an adult safety belt. Always check the child seat Owner's Manual to make sure you have the correct seat for your child. Carefully read and follow all the instructions and warnings in the child restraint Owner's Manual and on all the labels attached to the child restraint.

Before buying any restraint system, make sure that it has a label certifying that it meets all applicable Safety Standards. You should also make sure that you can install it in the vehicle where you will use it.

### NOTE:

- For additional information, refer to <http://www.nhtsa.gov/parents-and-caregivers> or call: 1-888-327-4236
- Canadian residents should refer to Transport Canada's website for additional information: <http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/safedrivers-child-safety-index-53.htm>

## Summary Of Recommendations For Restraining Children In Vehicles

	Child Size, Height, Weight Or Age	Recommended Type Of Child Restraint
Infants and Toddlers	Children who are two years old or younger and who have not reached the height or weight limits of their child restraint	Either an Infant Carrier or a Convertible Child Restraint, facing rearward in a rear seat of the vehicle
Small Children	Children who are at least two years old or who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint	Forward-Facing Child Restraint with a five-point Harness, facing forward in a rear seat of the vehicle
Larger Children	Children who have outgrown their forward-facing child restraint, but are too small to properly fit the vehicle's seat belt	Belt Positioning Booster Seat and the vehicle seat belt, seated in a rear seat of the vehicle
Children Too Large for Child Restraints	Children 12 years old or younger, who have outgrown the height or weight limit of their booster seat	Vehicle Seat Belt, seated in a rear seat of the vehicle

### Infant And Child Restraints

Safety experts recommend that children ride rear-facing in the vehicle until they are two years old or until they reach either the height or weight limit of their rear-facing child restraint. Two types of child restraints can be used rear-facing: infant carriers and convertible child seats.

The infant carrier is only used rear-facing in the vehicle. It is recommended for children from birth until they reach the weight or height limit of the infant carrier. Convertible

child seats can be used either rear-facing or forward-facing in the vehicle. Convertible child seats often have a higher weight limit in the rear-facing direction than infant carriers do, so they can be used rear-facing by children who have outgrown their infant carrier but are still less than at least two years old. Children should remain rear-facing until they reach the highest weight or height allowed by their convertible child seat.



#### WARNING!

- ❑ Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying passenger front air bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the front seat of a vehicle. Only use a rear-facing child restraint in the rear seat. If the vehicle does not have a rear seat, do not transport a rear-facing child restraint in that vehicle.

**WARNING!**

Do not install a rear-facing car seat using a rear support leg in this vehicle. The floor of this vehicle is not designed to manage the crash forces of this type of car seat. In a crash, the support leg may not function as it was designed by the car seat manufacturer, and your child may be more severely injured as a result.

**Older Children And Child Restraints**

Children who are two years old or who have outgrown their rear-facing convertible child seat can ride forward-facing in the vehicle. Forward-facing child seats and convertible child seats used in the forward-facing direction are for children who are over two years old or who have outgrown the rear-facing weight or height limit of their rear-facing

convertible child seat. Children should remain in a forward-facing child seat with a harness for as long as possible, up to the highest weight or height allowed by the child seat.

All children whose weight or height is above the forward-facing limit for the child seat should use a belt-positioning booster seat until the vehicle's seat belts fit properly. If the child cannot sit with knees bent over the vehicle's seat cushion while the child's back is against the seatback, they should use a belt-positioning booster seat. The child and belt-positioning booster seat are held in the vehicle by the seat belt.

**WARNING!**

- Improper installation can lead to failure of an infant or child restraint. It could come loose in a collision. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- After a child restraint is installed in the vehicle, do not move the vehicle seat forward or rearward because it can loosen the child restraint attachments. Remove the child restraint before adjusting the vehicle seat position. When the vehicle seat has been adjusted, reinstall the child restraint.
- When your child restraint is not in use, secure it in the vehicle with the seat belt or LATCH anchorages, or remove it from the vehicle. Do not leave it loose in the vehicle. In a sudden stop or accident, it could strike the occupants or seatbacks and cause serious personal injury.

**Children Too Large For Booster Seats**

Children who are large enough to wear the shoulder belt comfortably, and whose legs are long enough to bend over the front of the seat when their back is against the seatback, should use the seat belt in a rear seat. Use


this simple 5-step test to decide whether the child can use the vehicle's seat belt alone:

1. Can the child sit all the way back against the back of the vehicle seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the front of the vehicle seat – while the child is still sitting all the way back?
3. Does the shoulder belt cross the child's shoulder between the neck and arm?

4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs and not the stomach?
5. Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If the answer to any of these questions was "no," then the child still needs to use a booster seat in this vehicle. If the child is using the lap/shoulder belt, check seat belt fit periodically and make sure the seat belt buckle is latched. A child's squirming or slouching can move the belt out of position.

If the shoulder belt contacts the face or neck, move the child closer to the center of the vehicle, or use a booster seat to position the seat belt on the child correctly.

 **WARNING!**

Never allow a child to put the shoulder belt under an arm or behind their back. In a crash, the shoulder belt will not protect a child properly, which may result in serious injury or death. A child must always wear both the lap and shoulder portions of the seat belt correctly.

### Recommendations For Attaching Child Restraints

Restraint Type	Combined Weight of the Child + Child Restraint	Use Any Attachment Method Shown With An "X" Below			
		LATCH – Lower Anchors Only	Seat Belt Only	LATCH – Lower Anchors + Top Tether Anchor	Seat Belt + Top Tether Anchor
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)	X	X		
Rear-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)		X		
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	Up to 65 lbs (29.5 kg)			X	X
Forward-Facing Child Restraint	More than 65 lbs (29.5 kg)				X



## Lower Anchors And Tethers For CHildren (LATCH) Restraint System



LATCH Label

Your vehicle is equipped with the child restraint anchorage system called LATCH, which stands for Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren. The LATCH system has three vehicle anchor points for installing LATCH-equipped child seats. There are two lower anchorages located at the back of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback and one top tether anchorage located behind the seating position. These anchorages are used to install LATCH-equipped child seats without using the vehicle's seat belts. Some seating positions may have a top tether anchorage but no lower anchorages. In these seating positions, the seat belt must be used with the top tether anchorage to install the child restraint. Please see the following table for more information.

## LATCH Positions For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle




### Regular Cab LATCH Positions


 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

---

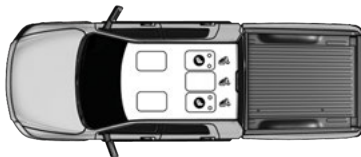


### Crew Cab 60/40 Split Bench LATCH Positions


 Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorages Per Seating Position)

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

---



### Crew Cab Full Bench LATCH Positions

 Lower Anchorage Symbol (2 Anchorages Per Seating Position)

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

---



### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH

What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the LATCH anchorage system to attach the child restraint?	65 lbs (29.5 kg)	Use the LATCH anchorage system until the combined weight of the child and the child restraint is 65 lbs (29.5 kg). Use the seat belt and tether anchor instead of the LATCH system once the combined weight is more than 65 lbs (29.5 kg).
Can the LATCH anchorages and the seat belt be used together to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint?	No	Do not use the seat belt when you use the LATCH anchorage system to attach a rear-facing or forward-facing child restraint. Booster seats may be attached to the LATCH anchorages if allowed by the booster seat manufacturer. See your booster seat owner's manual for more information.
Can a child seat be installed in the center position using the inner LATCH lower anchorages from the outboard seating positions?	No – Regular / Crew Full Rear Bench N/A – Crew Split Rear Bench	Regular Cab Front/Full Bench Rear Seat: Use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position. Split Bench Rear Seat: Use the supplied center lower anchorages to install a child restraint in the center position.

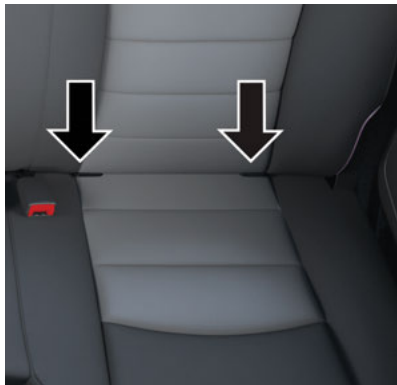
## Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With LATCH

Can two child restraints be attached using a common lower LATCH anchorage?	No	Never “share” a LATCH anchorage with two or more child restraints. If the center position does not have dedicated LATCH lower anchorages, use the seat belt to install a child seat in the center position next to a child seat using the LATCH anchorages in an outboard position.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	The child seat may touch the back of the front passenger seat if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact. See your child restraint owner's manual for more information.
Can the rear head restraints be removed?	Yes	The head restraints can be removed in every rear seating position if they interfere with the installation of the child restraint. Refer to “Head Restraints” in “Getting To Know Your Vehicle” for further information.



### Locating The LATCH Anchorages — Crew Cab Only

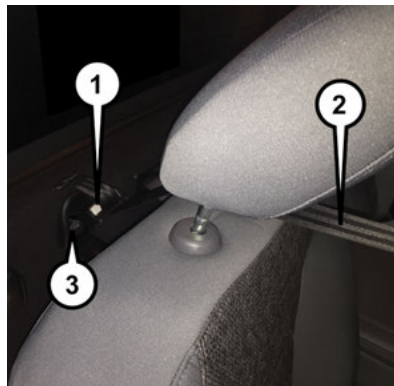
✎ The lower anchorages are round bars that are found at the rear of the seat cushion where it meets the seatback. They are just visible when you lean into the rear seat to install the child restraint. You will easily feel them if you run your finger along the gap between the seatback and seat cushion.



**Crew Cab Rear Outboard Seats Driver Side**

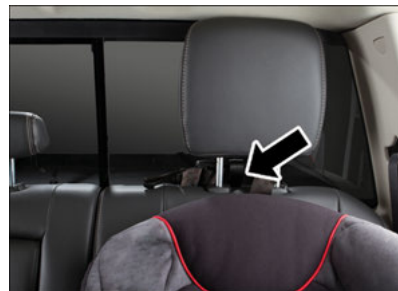
### Locating The Upper Tether Anchorages

✎ Regular Cab models have tether strap anchorages behind the front center and right seats. Crew Cab models have tether strap anchorages located behind each of the rear seats.



**Regular Cab Tether Anchorages**

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor



**Crew Cab Outboard Tether Anchorage**



**Crew Cab Center Tether Anchorage With Head Restraint In Raised Position**

LATCH-compatible child restraint systems will be equipped with a rigid bar or a flexible strap on each side. Each will have a hook or connector to attach to the lower anchorage and a way to tighten the connection to the anchorage. Forward-facing child restraints and some rear-facing child restraints will also be equipped with a tether strap. The tether strap will have a hook at the end to attach to the top tether anchorage and a way to tighten the strap after it is attached to the anchorage.

### Center Seat LATCH

#### Regular Cab or Crew Cab Full Bench Rear Seat: No Lower Center LATCH Anchorages Available



#### WARNING!

- Do not install a child restraint in the center position using the LATCH system. This position is not approved for installing child seats using the LATCH attachments. You must use the seat belt and tether anchor to install a child seat in the center seating position.

*(Continued)*



#### WARNING! (Continued)

- Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to “To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint” for typical installation instructions.

#### Crew Cab Split Bench Rear Seat: Center LATCH Anchorages Available

If a child restraint installed in the center position blocks the seat belt webbing or buckle for the outboard position, do not use that outboard position. If a child seat in the center position blocks the outboard LATCH anchors or seat belt, do not install a child seat in that outboard position.



#### WARNING!

- Never use the same lower anchorage to attach more than one child restraint. Please refer to “To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint” for typical installation instructions.

**Always follow the directions of the child restraint manufacturer when installing your child restraint. Not all child restraint systems will be installed as described here.**

### To Install A LATCH-Compatible Child Restraint

If the selected seating position has a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) seat belt, stow the seat belt, following the instructions below. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Vehicle Seat Belt” to check what type of seat belt each seating position has.

1. Loosen the adjusters on the lower straps and on the tether strap of the child seat so that you can more easily attach the hooks or connectors to the vehicle anchorages.
2. Place the child seat between the lower anchorages for that seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint (if adjustable) to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.
3. Attach the lower hooks or connectors of the child restraint to the lower anchorages in the selected seating position.



4. If the child restraint has a tether strap, connect it to the top tether anchorage. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
5. Tighten all of the straps as you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the seat. Remove slack in the straps according to the child restraint manufacturer’s instructions.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

### How To Stow An Unused Switchable-ALR (ALR) Seat Belt:

When using the LATCH attaching system to install a child restraint, stow all ALR seat belts that are not being used by other occupants or being used to secure child restraints. An unused belt could injure a child if they play with it and accidentally lock the seat belt retractor. Before installing a child restraint using the LATCH system, buckle the seat belt behind the child

restraint and out of the child’s reach. If the buckled seat belt interferes with the child restraint installation, instead of buckling it behind the child restraint, route the seat belt through the child restraint belt path and then buckle it. Do not lock the seat belt. Remind all children in the vehicle that the seat belts are not toys and that they should not play with them.



#### WARNING!

- Improper installation of a child restraint to the LATCH anchorages can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed. Follow the child restraint manufacturer’s directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.
- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly-fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

### Installing Child Restraints Using The Vehicle Seat Belt

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.



#### WARNING!

- Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- Follow the child restraint manufacturer’s directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

The seat belts in the passenger seating positions are equipped with either a Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) or a cinching latch plate or both. Both types of seat belts are designed to keep the lap portion of the seat belt tight around the child restraint so that it is not necessary to use a locking clip. The ALR retractor can be “switched” into a locked mode by pulling all of the webbing out of the retractor and then letting the webbing retract back into the retractor. If it is locked, the ALR will make a clicking noise while the webbing is pulled back into the retractor. Refer to the “Auto-

matic Locking Mode” description in “Switchable Automatic Locking Retractors (ALR)” under “Occupant Restraint Systems” for additional information on ALR. The cinching latch plate is designed to hold the lap portion of the seat belt tight when webbing is pulled tight and straight through a child restraint’s belt path.

Please see the table below and the following sections for more information.

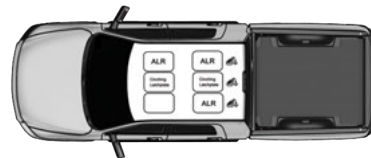
## Lap/Shoulder Belt Systems For Installing Child Restraints In This Vehicle



### Regular Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



### Crew Cab Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Locations

Cinching Latchplate = Cinching Latchplate  
ALR = Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor

 Top Tether Anchorage Symbol



### Frequently Asked Questions About Installing Child Restraints With Seat Belts

What is the weight limit (child's weight + weight of the child restraint) for using the Tether Anchor with the seat belt to attach a forward facing child restraint?	Weight limit of the Child Restraint	Always use the tether anchor when using the seat belt to install a forward facing child restraint, up to the recommended weight limit of the child restraint.
Can the rear-facing child restraint touch the back of the front passenger seat?	Yes	Contact between the front passenger seat and the child restraint is allowed, if the child restraint manufacturer also allows contact.
Can the rear head restraints be removed?	Yes	The head restraints can be removed in every rear seating position if they interfere with the installation of the child restraint. Refer to "Head Restraints" in "Getting To Know Your Vehicle" for further information.
Can the buckle stalk be twisted to tighten the seat belt against the belt path of the child restraint?	Yes – Cinching Latch Plate No – ALR	In positions with cinching latch plates (CINCH), the buckle stalk may be twisted up to 3 full turns. Do not twist the buckle stalk in a seating position with an ALR retractor.

## Installing A Child Restraint With A Switchable Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR):

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.



### WARNING!

- ❑ Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- ❑ Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

### 1. For Crew Cab Models

Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and/or raise the head restraint (if adjustable) to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

### For Regular Cab Models

Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. Move the vehicle seat as far rearward as possible to keep the child as far from the passenger air bag as possible.

2. Pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click."
4. Pull on the webbing to make the lap portion tight against the child seat.
5. To lock the seat belt, pull down on the shoulder part of the belt until you have pulled all the seat belt webbing out of the retractor. Then, allow the webbing to retract back into the retractor. As the webbing retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This means the seat belt is now in the Automatic Locking mode.
6. Try to pull the webbing out of the retractor. If it is locked, you should not be able to pull out any webbing. If the retractor is not locked, repeat step 5.

7. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.

8. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section "Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage" for directions to attach a tether anchor.

9. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.



### Installing A Child Restraint With A Cinching Latch Plate (CINCH) — If Equipped:

Child restraint systems are designed to be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap/shoulder belt.



#### WARNING!

- ❑ Improper installation or failure to properly secure a child restraint can lead to failure of the restraint. The child could be badly injured or killed.
- ❑ Follow the child restraint manufacturer's directions exactly when installing an infant or child restraint.

1. Place the child seat in the center of the seating position. For some second row seats, you may need to recline the seat and / or raise the head restraint (if adjustable) to get a better fit. If the rear seat can be moved forward and rearward in the vehicle, you may wish to move it to its rear-most position to make room for the child seat. You may also move the front seat forward to allow more room for the child seat.

2. Next, pull enough of the seat belt webbing from the retractor to pass it through the belt path of the child restraint. Do not twist the belt webbing in the belt path.
3. Slide the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a “click.”
4. Finally, pull up on any excess webbing to tighten the lap portion around the child restraint while you push the child restraint rearward and downward into the vehicle seat.
5. If the child restraint has a top tether strap and the seating position has a top tether anchorage, connect the tether strap to the anchorage and tighten the tether strap. See the section “Installing Child Restraints Using the Top Tether Anchorage” for directions to attach a tether anchor.
6. Test that the child restraint is installed tightly by pulling back and forth on the child seat at the belt path. It should not move more than 1 inch (25.4 mm) in any direction.

Any seat belt system will loosen with time, so check the belt occasionally, and pull it tight if necessary.

If the buckle or the cinching latch plate is too close to the belt path opening of the child restraint, you may have trouble tightening the seat belt. If this happens, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle and twist the short buckle-end belt up to three full turns to shorten it. Insert the latch plate into the buckle with the release button facing out, away from the child restraint. Repeat steps 4 to 6, above, to complete the installation of the child restraint.

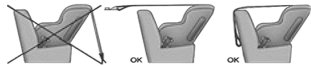
If the belt still cannot be tightened after you shorten the buckle, disconnect the latch plate from the buckle, turn the buckle around one half turn, and insert the latch plate into the buckle again. If you still cannot make the child restraint installation tight, try a different seating position.

## Installing Child Restraints Using The Top Tether Anchorage



### WARNING!

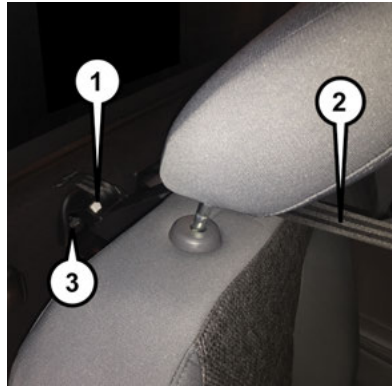
Do not attach a tether strap for a rear-facing car seat to any location in front of the car seat, including the seat frame or a tether anchorage. Only attach the tether strap of a rear-facing car seat to the tether anchorage that is approved for that seating position, located behind the top of the vehicle seat. See the section “Lower Anchors and Tethers for CHildren (LATCH) Restraint System” for the location of approved tether anchorages in your vehicle.



### Regular Cab Trucks:

In the regular cab truck, the top tether anchorages are located behind the center and right passenger seats. There is a plastic cover over each anchorage. To attach the tether strap of the child restraint:

1. Place the child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint and to the tether anchor directly behind the seat.



### Regular Cab Tether Anchorages

- 1 — Tether Strap Hook
- 2 — Tether Strap To Child Restraint
- 3 — Tether Anchor

2. Route the tether strap to provide the most direct path between the anchorage and the child seat. The tether strap should go between the head restraint

posts underneath the head restraint. You may need to adjust the head restraint to the upward position to pass the tether strap underneath the head restraint and between its posts.

3. Lift the cover (if so equipped), and attach the hook to the square opening in the sheet metal. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



### WARNING!

Never place a rear-facing child restraint in front of an air bag. A deploying Passenger Front Air Bag can cause death or serious injury to a child 12 years or younger, including a child in a rear-facing child restraint.

### Crew Cab Trucks

The top tether anchorages in this vehicle are tether strap loops located between the rear glass and the back of the rear seat. There is a tether strap loop located behind each seating position. Follow the steps below to attach the tether strap of the child restraint.

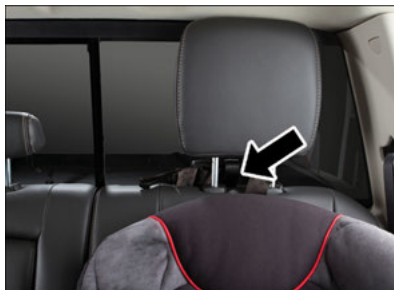


**Right Or Left Outboard Seats:**

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.

**Head Restraint In Raised Position****Tether Strap Loop With Center Head Restraint In Raised Position**

2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind the center seat.
3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, though the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the center tether strap loop.

**Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop**

4. Attach the hook to the center tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

**Tether Strap Through Outboard Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Center Tether Strap Loop****NOTE:**

If there are child seats in both of the outboard (left and right) seating positions, the tether strap hooks of both child seats should be connected to the center tether strap loop. This is the correct way to tether two outboard child seats.

### Center Seat:

1. Raise the head restraint and reach between the rear seat and rear glass to access the tether strap loop.



**Tether Strap Loop With Head Restraint In Raised Position**

2. Place a child restraint on the seat and adjust the tether strap so that it will reach over the seat back, under the head restraint, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the tether strap loop behind either the right or left outboard seat.

3. Pass the tether strap hook under the head restraint behind the child seat, through the tether strap loop behind the seat and over to the right or left outboard tether strap loop.



**Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop**

4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop (see diagram). Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.



**Tether Strap Through Center Tether Strap Loop And Attached To Outboard Tether Strap Loop**

### Installing Three Child Restraints:

1. Place a child restraint on each outboard rear seat. Route the tether straps following the directions for right and left seating positions, above.
2. Attach both hooks to the center tether strap loop, but do not tighten the straps yet.
3. Place a child restraint on the center rear seat. Route the tether strap following the directions for the center seating position, above.
4. Attach the hook to the outboard tether strap loop.



5. Tighten the tether straps according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions, tightening the right and left tether straps before the center tether strap.



Outboard And Center Seating Positions Shown



#### WARNING!

- ❑ An incorrectly anchored tether strap could lead to increased head motion and possible injury to the child. Use only the anchorage position directly behind the child seat to secure a child restraint top tether strap.
- ❑ If your vehicle is equipped with a split rear seat, make sure the tether strap does not slip into the opening between the seatbacks as you remove slack in the strap.

### Transporting Pets

Air Bags deploying in the front seat could harm your pet. An unrestrained pet will be thrown about and possibly injured, or injure a passenger during panic braking or in a collision.

Pets should be restrained in the rear seat (if equipped) in pet harnesses or pet carriers that are secured by seat belts.

## SAFETY TIPS

### Transporting Passengers

NEVER TRANSPORT PASSENGERS IN THE CARGO AREA.



#### WARNING!

- ❑ Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.
- ❑ It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed.

*(Continued)*



#### WARNING! (Continued)

- ❑ Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seat belts.
- ❑ Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a seat belt properly.

### Exhaust Gas



#### WARNING!

Exhaust gases can injure or kill. They contain carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Breathing it can make you unconscious and can eventually poison you. To avoid breathing (CO), follow these safety tips:

- ❑ Do not run the engine in a closed garage or in confined areas any longer than needed to move your vehicle in or out of the area.
- ❑ If you are required to drive with the trunk/liftgate/rear doors open, make sure that all windows are closed and the climate control BLOWER switch is set at high speed. DO NOT use the recirculation mode.

*(Continued)*



## WARNING! (Continued)

- If it is necessary to sit in a parked vehicle with the engine running, adjust your heating or cooling controls to force outside air into the vehicle. Set the blower at high speed.

The best protection against carbon monoxide entry into the vehicle body is a properly maintained engine exhaust system.

Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system, when exhaust fumes can be detected inside the vehicle, or when the underside or rear of the vehicle is damaged, have a competent mechanic inspect the complete exhaust system and adjacent body areas for broken, damaged, deteriorated, or mispositioned parts. Open seams or loose connections could permit exhaust fumes to seep into the passenger compartment. In addition, inspect the exhaust system each time the vehicle is raised for lubrication or oil change. Replace as required.


## Safety Checks You Should Make Inside The Vehicle

### Seat Belts

Inspect the seat belt system periodically, checking for cuts, frays, and loose parts. Damaged parts must be replaced immediately. Do not disassemble or modify the system.

Front seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision. Rear seat belt assemblies must be replaced after a collision if they have been damaged (i.e., bent retractor, torn webbing, etc.). If there is any question regarding seat belt or retractor condition, replace the seat belt.

### Air Bag Warning Light

The Air Bag warning light  will turn on for four to eight seconds as a bulb check when the ignition switch is first turned to ON/RUN. If the light is either not on during starting, stays on, or turns on while driving, have the system inspected at an authorized dealer as soon as possible. After the bulb check, this light will illuminate with a single chime when a fault with the Air Bag System has been detected. It will stay on until the fault is removed. If the light comes on intermittently

or remains on while driving, have an authorized dealer service the vehicle immediately.

Refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information.

### Defroster

Check operation by selecting the defrost mode and place the blower control on high speed. You should be able to feel the air directed against the windshield. See an authorized dealer for service if your defroster is inoperable.


### Floor Mat Safety Information

Always use floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. Only use a floor mat that does not interfere with the operation of the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals. Only use a floor mat that is securely attached using the floor mat fasteners so it cannot slip out of position and interfere with the accelerator, brake or clutch pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.



**WARNING!**

An improperly attached, damaged, folded, or stacked floor mat, or damaged floor mat fasteners may cause your floor mat to interfere with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and cause a loss of vehicle control. To prevent **SERIOUS INJURY** or **DEATH**:

□ ALWAYS securely attach  your floor mat using the floor mat fasteners. **DO NOT** install your floor mat upside down or turn your floor mat over. Lightly pull to confirm mat is secured using the floor mat fasteners on a regular basis.

□ ALWAYS REMOVE THE EXISTING FLOOR MAT FROM THE VEHICLE



before installing any other floor mat. **NEVER** install or stack an additional floor mat on top of an existing floor mat.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

□ **ONLY** install floor mats designed to fit your vehicle. **NEVER** install a floor mat that cannot be properly attached and secured to your vehicle. If a floor mat needs to be replaced, only use a FCA approved floor mat for the specific make, model, and year of your vehicle.

□ **ONLY** use the driver's side floor mat on the driver's side floor area. To check for interference, with the vehicle properly parked with the engine off, fully depress the accelerator, the brake, and the clutch pedal (if present) to check for interference. If your floor mat interferes with the operation of any pedal, or is not secure to the floor, remove the floor mat from the vehicle and place the floor mat in your trunk.

□ **ONLY** use the passenger's side floor mat on the passenger's side floor area.

□ **ALWAYS** make sure objects cannot fall or slide into the driver's side floor area when the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals and could cause a loss of vehicle control.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

□ **NEVER** place any objects under the floor mat (e.g., towels, keys, etc.). These objects could change the position of the floor mat and may cause interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals.

□ If the vehicle carpet has been removed and re-installed, always properly attach carpet to the floor and check the floor mat fasteners are secure to the vehicle carpet. Fully depress each pedal to check for interference with the accelerator, brake, or clutch pedals then re-install the floor mats.

□ It is recommended to only use mild soap and water to clean your floor mats. After cleaning, always check your floor mat has been properly installed and is secured to your vehicle using the floor mat fasteners by lightly pulling mat.

## Periodic Safety Checks You Should Make Outside The Vehicle

### Tires

Examine tires for excessive tread wear and uneven wear patterns. Check for stones, nails, glass, or other objects lodged in the tread or sidewall. Inspect the tread for cuts and cracks. Inspect sidewalls for cuts, cracks, and bulges. Check the wheel bolts for tightness. Check the tires (including spare) for proper cold inflation pressure.

### Lights

Have someone observe the operation of brake lights and exterior lights while you work the controls. Check turn signal and high beam indicator lights on the instrument panel.

### Door Latches

Check for proper closing, latching, and locking.

### Fluid Leaks

Check area under the vehicle after overnight parking for fuel, coolant, oil, or other fluid leaks. Also, if gasoline fumes are detected or if fuel, or brake fluid leaks are suspected. The cause should be located and corrected immediately.



## STARTING THE ENGINE

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belt.

The starter should not be operated for more than 10-second intervals. Waiting a few seconds between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.



### WARNING!

- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in the "OFF" mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.
- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build-up may cause serious injury or death.

### Normal Starting Using ENGINE START/STOP Button

#### To Turn On The Engine Using The ENGINE START/STOP Button

1. The transmission must be in PARK.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal while pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button once.
3. The system takes over and attempts to start the vehicle. If the vehicle fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically after 10 seconds.

4. If you wish to stop the cranking of the engine prior to the engine starting, push the button again.

#### NOTE:

Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.

#### To Turn Off The Engine Using ENGINE START/STOP Button

1. Place the gear selector in PARK, then push and release the ENGINE START/STOP button.
2. The ignition will return to the OFF mode.
3. If the gear selector is not in PARK, the ENGINE START/STOP button must be held for two seconds or three short pushes in a row with the vehicle speed above 5 MPH (8 km/h) before the engine will shut off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode until the gear selector is in PARK and the button is pushed twice to the OFF mode.

4. If the gear selector is not in PARK and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once with the vehicle speed above 5 MPH (8 km/h), the instrument cluster will display a **“Vehicle Not In Park”** message and the engine will remain running. Never leave a vehicle out of the PARK position, or it could roll.

**NOTE:**

If the gear selector is not in PARK, and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once with the vehicle speed below 5 MPH (8 km/h), the engine will shut off and the ignition will remain in the ACC position. If vehicle speed drops below 1.2 MPH (1.9 km/h), the vehicle may AutoPark. See AutoPark section for further details.

**ENGINE START/STOP Button Functions — With Driver's Foot OFF The Brake Pedal (In PARK Or NEUTRAL Position)**

The ENGINE START/STOP button operates similar to an ignition switch. It has three modes: OFF, ACC, and RUN. To change the ignition modes without starting the vehicle and use the accessories, follow these directions:


1. Start with the ignition in the OFF mode.

2. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to place the ignition to the ACC mode.
3. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time to place the ignition to the RUN mode.
4. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a third time to return the ignition to the OFF mode.

**AutoPark — Rotary Shifter and 8-Speed Transmission Only**

AutoPark is a supplemental feature to assist in placing the vehicle in PARK should the situations on the following pages occur. It is a back up system and should not be relied upon as the primary method by which the driver shifts the vehicle into PARK.

The conditions under which AutoPark will engage are outlined on the following pages.

 **WARNING!**

- Driver inattention could lead to failure to place the vehicle in PARK. ALWAYS DO A VISUAL CHECK that your vehicle is in PARK by verifying that a solid (not blinking) “P” is indicated in the Instrument Cluster Display and near the gear selector. If the “P” indicator is blinking, your vehicle is not in PARK. As an added precaution, always apply the parking brake when exiting the vehicle.
- AutoPark is a supplemental feature. It is not designed to replace the need to shift your vehicle into PARK. It is a back up system and should not be relied upon as the primary method by which the driver shifts the vehicle into PARK.



If the vehicle is not in **PARK** and the driver turns off the engine, the vehicle may AutoPark.

AutoPark will engage when all of these conditions are met:

- Vehicle is equipped with a rotary shifter and an 8-speed transmission
- Vehicle is not in **PARK**
- Vehicle Speed is 1.2 MPH (1.9 km/h) or less
- Ignition switched from **RUN** to **ACC**

**NOTE:**

For Keyless Go equipped vehicles, The engine will turn off and the ignition switch will change to **ACC** mode. After 30 minutes the ignition switches to **OFF** automatically, unless the driver turns the ignition switch **OFF**.

If the vehicle is not in **PARK** and the driver exits the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle may AutoPark.

AutoPark will engage when all of these conditions are met:

- Vehicle is equipped with a rotary shifter and an 8-speed transmission
- Vehicle is not in **PARK**
- Vehicle speed is 1.2 MPH (1.9 km/h) or less
- Driver's seat belt is unbuckled
- Driver's door is ajar
- Brake Pedal is not depressed

The MESSAGE “**AutoPark Engaged Shift to P then Shift to Gear**” will display in the instrument cluster.

**NOTE:**

In some cases the ParkSense graphic will be displayed in the instrument cluster, causing the “**AutoPark Engaged Shift to P then Shift to Gear**” to not be seen. In these cases, the shifter must be returned to “**P**” to select desired gear.

If the driver shifts into **PARK** while moving, the vehicle may AutoPark.

AutoPark will engage **ONLY** when vehicle speed is 1.2 MPH (1.9 km/h) or less.

The MESSAGE “**Vehicle Speed is Too High to Shift to P**” will be displayed in the instrument cluster if vehicle speed is above 1.2 MPH (1.9 km/h).



**WARNING!**

If vehicle speed is above 1.2 MPH (1.9 km/h), the transmission will default to **NEUTRAL** until the vehicle speed drops below 1.2 MPH (1.9 km). A vehicle left in the **NEUTRAL** position can roll. As an added precaution, always apply the parking brake when exiting the vehicle.

**4WD LOW — If Equipped**

**AutoPark will be disabled when operating the vehicle in 4WD LOW.**

The MESSAGE “**AutoPark Disabled**” will be displayed in the instrument cluster.

**Additional customer warnings will be given when all of these conditions are met:**

- Vehicle is not in PARK
- Driver's Door is ajar
- Vehicle is in 4WD LOW range

The MESSAGE “**AutoPark Not Engaged**” will be displayed in the instrument cluster. A warning chime will continue until you shift the vehicle into PARK or the Driver's Door is closed.

**ALWAYS DO A VISUAL CHECK** that your vehicle is in PARK by looking for the "P" in the Instrument Cluster Display and near the shifter. As an added precaution, always apply the parking brake when exiting the vehicle.

## **STARTING THE ENGINE — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE**

Before starting your vehicle, adjust your seat, adjust both inside and outside mirrors, and fasten your seat belts.

The starter should not be operated for more than 15-second intervals. Waiting a few minutes between such intervals will protect the starter from overheating.



### **WARNING!**

- Do not leave children or animals inside parked vehicles in hot weather. Interior heat build up may cause serious injury or death.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the keyless ignition node is in the “OFF” mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle and lock the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle, or in a location accessible to children, and do not leave the ignition of a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.

## **Keyless Enter-N-Go – Ignition**

This feature allows the driver to operate the ignition switch with the push of a button, as long as the Remote Start/Keyless Enter-N-Go key fob is in the passenger compartment.

### **Normal Starting**

#### **Using The ENGINE START/STOP Button**

1. The transmission must be in PARK or NEUTRAL.
2. Press and hold the brake pedal while pushing the ENGINE START/STOP button once.
3. The system takes over and attempts to start the vehicle. If the vehicle fails to start, the starter will disengage automatically after 25 seconds.
4. If you wish to stop the cranking of the engine prior to the engine starting, remove your foot from the brake pedal and push the button again.



**NOTE:**

- Normal starting of either a cold or a warm engine is obtained without pumping or pressing the accelerator pedal.
- Under cold weather conditions, the engine may not immediately crank if the "Wait To Start" telltale is illuminated. This is normal operation. For vehicles equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go, the vehicle will automatically crank when the "Wait To Start" time has elapsed. See the section "Starting Procedure Engine Manifold Air Temperature 0°F to 66°F (18° C to 19°C)" in the Diesel Supplement for more information.

**To Turn Off The Engine Using ENGINE START/STOP Button**

1. Place the gear selector in PARK, then push and release the ENGINE START/STOP button.
2. The ignition will return to the OFF mode.
3. If the gear selector is not in PARK and the ENGINE START/STOP button is pushed once, the instrument cluster will display a "Vehicle Not In Park" message and the engine will remain running.

Never leave a vehicle out of the PARK position, or it could roll.

4. If the gear selector is in NEUTRAL, and the vehicle speed below 5 mph (8 km/h), pushing the START/STOP button once will turn the engine off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode.
5. If the vehicle speed is above 5 mph (8 km/h), the ENGINE START/STOP button must be held for two seconds (or three short pushes in a row) to turn the engine off. The ignition will remain in the ACC mode (NOT the OFF mode) if the engine is turned off when the transmission is not in PARK.

**NOTE:**

If the ignition is left in the ACC or ON/RUN (engine not running) mode and the transmission is in PARK, the system will automatically time out after 30 minutes of inactivity and the ignition return to the OFF mode.

**ENGINE START/STOP Button Functions — With Driver's Foot OFF The Brake Pedal (In PARK Or NEUTRAL Position)**

The ENGINE START/STOP button operates similar to an ignition switch. It has three positions, OFF, ACC, RUN. To change the

ignition switch positions without starting the vehicle and use the accessories follow these steps:

1. Starting with the ignition in the OFF position:
2. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button once to change the ignition to the ACC position.
3. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a second time to change the ignition to the RUN position.
4. Push the ENGINE START/STOP button a third time to return the ignition to the OFF position.

**Keyless Enter-N-Go Starting Procedure — Engine Manifold Air Temperature 0° F To 66° F (–18° C to 19° C)****NOTE:**

The temperature displayed in the instrument cluster does not necessarily reflect the engine manifold air temperature. Refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information. When engine temperatures fall below 66°F (19°C) the "Wait To Start Light" will remain on indicating the intake manifold heater system is active.

Follow the steps in the “Normal Starting” procedure except:

1. Pushing the engine start button with the driver’s foot on the brake will move the ignition from OFF or ACC to RUN, and will illuminate the "Wait To Start" telltale. The engine will not immediately crank, this is normal operation.
2. The “Wait To Start” telltale will remain on for a period of time that varies depending on the engine temperature.
3. While the "Wait to Start" telltale is on, the instrument cluster will additionally display a gauge or bar whose initial length represents the full "Wait to Start" time period. Its length will decrease until it disappears when the "Wait to Start" time has elapsed.



### CAUTION!

If the “Water in Fuel Indicator Light” remains on, DO NOT START engine before you drain the water from the fuel filters to avoid engine damage. Refer to “Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter” in “Servicing And Maintenance” in your Diesel Supplement for further information, which can be found with your online Owner’s Information.

4. After the engine “Wait to Start” telltale goes off, the engine will automatically crank.



### CAUTION!

Do not crank engine for more than 15 seconds at a time or starter motor damage may result. Turn the ignition switch to the OFF position and wait at least two minutes for the starter to cool before repeating start procedure.

5. After engine start-up, check to see that there is oil pressure.

6. Allow the engine to idle about three minutes until the manifold heaters have completed the post-heat cycle.

7. Release the parking brake and drive.

### NOTE:

- Engine idle speed will automatically increase to 1,000 RPM and engage the Variable Geometry Turbocharger at low coolant temperatures to improve engine warm-up.
- The engine may not automatically crank after the engine "Wait To Start" telltale goes off if a door or the hood is ajar.
- If the engine stalls, or if the ignition switch is left ON for more than two minutes after the “Wait To Start Light” goes out, reset the grid heaters by turning the ignition switch to the OFF position for at least five seconds and then back ON. Repeat steps 1 through 7 of “Keyless Enter-N-Go Starting Procedure – Engine Manifold Air Temperature Below 66° F (19° C).”



## Extreme Cold Weather

The Cummins diesel engine is equipped with several features designed to assist cold weather starting and operation:

- The engine block heater is a resistance heater installed in the water jacket of the engine just above and behind the oil filter. It requires a 110–115 Volt AC electrical outlet with a grounded, three-wire extension cord.

### NOTE:

The engine block heater cord is a factory installed option. If your vehicle is not equipped, heater cords are available from your authorized Mopar dealer.

- A 12 Volt heater built into the fuel filter housings aid in preventing fuel gelling. It is controlled by a built-in thermostat.
- A heated intake air system both improves engine starting and reduces the amount of white smoke generated by a warming engine.

## NORMAL OPERATION — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE

Observe the following when the engine is operating.

- All message center lights are off.
- Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) is off.
- Engine oil pressure is above 10 psi (69 kPa) at idle.
- Voltmeter operation:

The voltmeter may show a gauge fluctuation at various engine temperatures. This cycling operation is caused by the post-heat cycle of the intake manifold heater system. The number of cycles and the length of the cycling operation is controlled by the engine control module. Post-heat operation can run for several minutes, and then the electrical system and voltmeter needle will stabilize.

The cycling action will cause temporary dimming of the headlamps, interior lamps, and also a noticeable reduction in blower motor speed.

## Cold Weather Precautions

Operation in ambient temperature below 32°F (0°C) may require special considerations. The following charts suggest these options:

### Winter Front Cover Usage

A winter front or cold weather cover is to be used in ambient temperatures below 32°F (0°C), especially during extended idle conditions. This cover is equipped with four flaps for managing total grille opening in varying ambient temperatures. If a winter front or cold weather cover is to be used the flaps should be left in the full open position to allow air flow to the charge air cooler and automatic transmission oil cooler. When ambient temperatures drop below 0°F (-17°C) the four flaps need to be closed. A suitable cold weather cover is available from your Mopar dealer.

### Engine Idling

Avoid prolonged idling, long periods of idling may be harmful to your engine because combustion chamber temperatures can drop so low that the fuel may not burn completely. Incomplete combustion allows carbon and varnish to form on piston rings, engine

valves, and injector nozzles. Also, the unburned fuel can enter the crankcase, diluting the oil and causing rapid wear to the engine.

If the engine is allowed to idle or the truck is driven on low engine speed drive cycles for more than 2 hours, the system will automatically enter an emissions operating mode that will increase the engine idle speed to 900 RPM (1050 RPM for Chassis Cab). While in this mode, which is designed to help maintain the diesel particulate filter, the engine idle speed will return to normal when the brake pedal is applied. A small change in engine tone or a slight change in engine performance while accelerating may also be noticeable at speeds below 20 mph (32 kmh). This operating mode may last for up to an hour of idle time, or around 20 minutes of driving time.

Your truck may have been ordered with an optional voltage monitoring idle up feature. If a load is placed on the electrical system while the truck is in park, this feature will attempt to maintain normal system voltage by automatically increasing engine idle speed. You may notice several consecutive increases in idle speed, up to a maximum of 1450 RPM, as the system will attempt to

utilize the smallest increase in idle speed necessary to maintain normal system voltage. The idle speed will return to normal when either the electrical load is removed, or when the brake pedal is applied.

**NOTE:**

For instrument cluster display messages related to the vehicle's exhaust system, refer to "Instrument Cluster Display" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" for further information.

**Idle-Up Feature**

The driver-controlled high idle speed feature will help increase cylinder temperatures and provide additional cab heat, however, excessive idling may still cause the exhaust after-treatment system to not properly regenerate. Extended periods of idle time should be avoided.

The Idle-Up feature uses the speed control switches to increase engine idle speed and quickly warm the vehicle's interior.

1. With the transmission in PARK, the parking brake applied, and the engine running, push the speed control switch to the ON position, then push the SET switch.

2. The engine RPM will go up to 1100 RPM. To increase the RPM, push and hold the ACCEL/RESUME switch and the idle speed will increase to approximately 1500 RPM. To decrease the RPM, push and hold the DECEL switch and the idle speed will decrease to approximately 1100 RPM.

3. To cancel the Idle-Up feature, either push the CANCEL switch, push the ON/OFF switch, or press the brake pedal.

**Noise**

Diesel engines can create noises that may seem as a concern. The nature of a diesel engine is compression ignition where compressed air and fuel are mixed and ignited. Weather, Barometric Pressure, Altitude and Temperature will affect how fuel is ignited in the engine. Engine's will sound different from day to day or previous model years. Clicking, ticking, or light knocking is normal and will change from day to day, as the engine breaks in, and can vary with changes in ambient temperature, this is normal. Diesel equipped vehicles also have an exhaust aftertreatment system to reduce emissions utilizing a DPF and a Selective Reduction Catalyst (SCR). The SCR reduces



Nox using the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) system. DEF is injected directly into the SCR through an dosing module. This process will create a clicking sound and at times, will make noise even with the vehicle shut off.

This is normal as the DEF dosing module is purging DEF. Fuel pump noise may increase during low speed/light load conditions when ambient temperature is above 100°F (38°C), and when fuel tank level is below 10%. This

is a normal condition of the fuel system and controls strategy. If at any time the check engine light is on, please visit an authorized dealer.

### Stopping The Engine

Idle the engine a few minutes before routine shutdown. After full load operation, idle the engine three to five minutes before shutting it down. This idle period will allow the lubricating oil and coolant to carry excess heat away from the combustion chamber, bearings, internal components, and turbocharger. This is especially important for turbocharged, charge air-cooled engines. Refer to the following chart for proper engine shutdown.

Driving Condition	Load	Turbocharger Temperature	Idle Time (min.) Before Engine Shutdown
Stop and Go	Empty	Cool	Less than One
Stop and Go	Medium	-	One
Highway Speeds	Medium	Warm	Two
City Traffic	Maximum GCWR	-	Three
Highway Speeds	Maximum GCWR	-	Four
Uphill Grade	Maximum GCWR	Hot	Five

### Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) Manual Regeneration - If Equipped (Chassis Cab Only)

On equipped chassis cabs, a manual regeneration can be enable through the instrument cluster. The manual regeneration will

allow the DPF to complete a regeneration, lowering the soot level without having to drive the vehicle. The vehicle must be in park to access this feature, and the fuel level must be over 12.5% full. A message displaying the time left on the regeneration will appear on the instrument cluster, and

the EVIC will display the soot level. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting to Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

## ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS – GASOLINE ENGINE

A long break-in period is not required for the engine and drivetrain (transmission and axle) in your vehicle.

Drive moderately during the first 300 miles (500 km). After the initial 60 miles (100 km), speeds up to 50 or 55 mph (80 or 90 km/h) are desirable.

While cruising, brief full-throttle acceleration within the limits of local traffic laws contributes to a good break-in. Wide-open throttle acceleration in low gear can be detrimental and should be avoided.

The engine oil installed in the engine at the factory is a high-quality energy conserving type lubricant. Oil changes should be consistent with anticipated climate conditions under which vehicle operations will occur. For the recommended viscosity and quality grades, refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications”.



### CAUTION!

Never use Non-Detergent Oil or Straight Mineral Oil in the engine or damage may result.

### NOTE:

A new engine may consume some oil during its first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation. This should be considered a normal part of the break-in and not interpreted as a problem. Please check your oil level with the engine oil indicator often during the break in period. Add oil as required.

## ENGINE BREAK-IN RECOMMENDATIONS – 6.7L DIESEL

The Cummins turbocharged diesel engine does not require a break-in period due to its construction. Normal operation is allowed, providing the following recommendations are followed:

- Warm up the engine before placing it under load.
- Do not operate the engine at idle for prolonged periods.

- Use the appropriate transmission gear to prevent engine lugging.
- Observe vehicle oil pressure and temperature indicators.
- Check the coolant and oil levels frequently.
- Vary throttle position at highway speeds when carrying or towing significant weight.

### NOTE:

Light duty operation such as light trailer towing or no load operation will extend the time before the engine is at full efficiency. Reduced fuel economy and power may be seen at this time.

For additional vehicle break-in requirements, refer to “Trailer Towing” in “Starting And Operating” of the Owner’s Manual.

Because of the construction of the Cummins turbocharged diesel engine, engine run-in is enhanced by loaded operating conditions which allow the engine parts to achieve final finish and fit during the first 6,000 miles (10 000 km).



## AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION



### WARNING!

- It is dangerous to shift out of PARK or NEUTRAL if the engine speed is higher than idle speed. If your foot is not firmly pressing the brake pedal, the vehicle could accelerate quickly forward or in reverse. You could lose control of the vehicle and hit someone or something. Only shift into gear when the engine is idling normally and your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.
- The transmission may not engage PARK if the vehicle is moving. Always bring the vehicle to a complete stop before shifting to PARK, and verify that the transmission gear position indicator solidly indicates PARK (P) without blinking. Ensure that the vehicle is completely stopped, and the PARK position is properly indicated, before exiting the vehicle.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Unintended movement of a vehicle could injure those in or near the vehicle. As with all vehicles, you should never exit a vehicle while the engine is running. Before exiting a vehicle, always come to a complete stop, then apply the parking brake, shift the transmission into PARK, turn the engine OFF, and remove the key fob. When the ignition is in the LOCK/OFF (key removal) position, (or, with Keyless Enter-N-Go, when the ignition is in the OFF mode) the transmission is locked in PARK, securing the vehicle against unwanted movement.
- When leaving the vehicle, always make sure the ignition is in the OFF mode, remove the key fob from the vehicle, and lock the vehicle.
- Never use the PARK position as a substitute for the parking brake. Always apply the parking brake fully when exiting the vehicle to guard against vehicle movement and possible injury or damage.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Your vehicle could move and injure you and others if it is not in PARK. Check by trying to move the gear selector out of PARK with the brake pedal released. Make sure the transmission is in PARK before exiting the vehicle.
- Never leave children alone in a vehicle, or with access to an unlocked vehicle. Allowing children to be in a vehicle unattended is dangerous for a number of reasons. A child or others could be seriously or fatally injured. Children should be warned not to touch the parking brake, brake pedal or the transmission gear selector.
- Do not leave the key fob in or near the vehicle (or in a location accessible to children), and do not leave the ignition (in a vehicle equipped with Keyless Enter-N-Go) in the ACC or ON/RUN mode. A child could operate power windows, other controls, or move the vehicle.



## CAUTION!

- Shift into or out of PARK or REVERSE only after the vehicle has come to a complete stop.
- Do not shift between PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, or DRIVE when the engine is above idle speed.
- Before shifting into any gear, make sure your foot is firmly pressing the brake pedal.

### NOTE:

You must press and hold the brake pedal while shifting out of PARK.

### Ignition Park Interlock

#### Vehicles With Pushbutton Start:

This vehicle is equipped with an Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition can be turned to the OFF mode. This helps the driver avoid inadvertently leaving the vehicle without placing the transmission in PARK. This system also locks the transmission in PARK whenever the ignition is in the OFF mode.

### NOTE:

The transmission is NOT locked in PARK when the ignition is in the ACC mode (even though the engine will be off). Ensure that the transmission is in PARK, and the ignition is OFF (not in ACC mode) before exiting the vehicle.

#### Vehicles With Mechanical Key:

This vehicle is equipped with a Key Ignition Park Interlock which requires the transmission to be in PARK before the ignition can be turned to the OFF (key removal) position. The key can only be removed from the ignition when the ignition is in the OFF position, and the transmission is locked in PARK whenever the ignition is in the OFF position. If the vehicle's battery becomes discharged, the key will be trapped in the ignition even when the gear selector is in PARK. Recharge the battery to allow key removal.

### NOTE:

If a malfunction occurs, the system will trap the key fob in the ignition to warn you that this safety feature is inoperable. The engine can be started and stopped but the key fob cannot be removed until you obtain service.

## Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System

This vehicle is equipped with a Brake Transmission Shift Interlock system (BTSI) that holds the transmission gear selector in PARK unless the brakes are applied. For vehicles with 8-speed transmission, to shift the transmission out of PARK, the engine must be running and the brake pedal must be pressed. The brake pedal must also be pressed to shift from NEUTRAL into DRIVE or REVERSE when the vehicle is stopped or moving at low speeds. For vehicles with 6-speed transmission, to shift the transmission out of PARK, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode (engine running or not) and the brake pedal must be pressed.

### Six-Speed Automatic Transmission – If Equipped

Chassis Cab models (with automatic transmission) may use either the AS66RC or AS69RC transmission (which are equipped with a Power Take-Off (PTO) access cover on the side of the transmission case).

The transmission gear position display (located in the instrument cluster) indicates the transmission gear range. The gear



selector is mounted on the right side of the steering column. You must press the brake pedal to move the gear selector out of PARK (refer to "Brake/Transmission Shift Interlock System" in this section). To drive, move the gear selector from PARK or NEUTRAL to the DRIVE position. Pull the gear selector toward you when shifting into REVERSE or PARK, or when shifting out of PARK.

The electronically-controlled transmission provides a precise shift schedule. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE shift positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control. Pushing the ERS (-/+) switches (on the steering wheel) while in the

DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Refer to "Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation" in this section for further information. Some models will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.

### **Transmission Limp Home Mode**

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is activated. In this mode, the transmission remains in third gear (for AS66RC/AS69RC transmission) regardless of which forward gear is selected. If an AS66RC/AS69RC equipped truck enters Limp Home Mode at highway speeds, it will initially engage fifth gear, until the vehicle slows to a speed where third gear can be engaged. PARK, REVERSE, and NEUTRAL will continue to operate. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. Limp Home Mode allows the vehicle to be driven to an authorized dealer for service without damaging the transmission.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK.
3. Turn the ignition OFF.
4. Wait approximately 10 seconds.
5. Restart the engine.
6. Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

### **NOTE:**

Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit your authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. Your authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to assess the condition of your transmission.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

## Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear, but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the gear selector is in the DRIVE position, the transmission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the ERS (-) switch will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping (-) or (+) will change the top available gear.



**Electronic Range Select**

1 — GEAR + Switch 2 — GEAR – Switch

To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the ERS (+) switch until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.



### **WARNING!**

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

### **NOTE:**

To select the proper gear position for maximum deceleration (engine braking), simply push and hold the ERS (-) switch. The transmission will shift to the range from which the vehicle can best be slowed down.



### **CAUTION!**

When using ERS for engine braking while descending steep grades, be careful not to overspeed the engine. Apply the brakes as needed to prevent engine overspeed.

## **Eight-Speed Automatic Transmission – If Equipped**

The transmission is controlled using a rotary electronic gear selector located on the instrument panel. The transmission gear range (PRND) is displayed both above the gear selector and in the instrument cluster. To select a gear range, simply rotate the gear selector. You must press the brake pedal to shift the transmission out of PARK (or NEUTRAL, when the vehicle is stopped or moving at low speeds). To shift past multiple gear ranges at once (such as PARK to DRIVE), simply rotate the gear selector to the appropriate detent. Select the DRIVE range for normal driving.



**NOTE:**

In the event of a mismatch between the gear selector position and the actual transmission gear (for example, driver selects PARK while driving), the position indicator will blink continuously until the selector is returned to the proper position, or the requested shift can be completed.

The electronically-controlled transmission adapts its shift schedule based on driver inputs, along with environmental and road conditions. The transmission electronics are self-calibrating; therefore, the first few shifts on a new vehicle may be somewhat abrupt. This is a normal condition, and precision shifts will develop within a few hundred miles (kilometers).

Only shift from DRIVE to PARK or REVERSE when the accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is stopped. Be sure to keep your foot on the brake pedal when shifting between these gears.

The transmission gear selector has only PARK, REVERSE, NEUTRAL, and DRIVE positions. Manual downshifts can be made using the Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control. Pressing the GEAR-/GEAR+ switches (on the steering wheel) while in the

DRIVE position will select the highest available transmission gear, and will display that gear limit in the instrument cluster as 1, 2, 3, etc. Refer to “Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation” in this section for further information. Some models will display both the selected gear limit, and the actual current gear, while in ERS mode.



**Electronic Transmission Gear Selector**

### Transmission Limp Home Mode

Transmission function is monitored electronically for abnormal conditions. If a condition is detected that could result in transmission damage, Transmission Limp Home Mode is

activated. In this mode, the transmission may operate only in certain gears, or may not shift at all. Vehicle performance may be severely degraded and the engine may stall. In some situations, the transmission may not re-engage if the engine is turned off and restarted. The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) may be illuminated. A message in the instrument cluster will inform the driver of the more serious conditions, and indicate what actions may be necessary.

In the event of a momentary problem, the transmission can be reset to regain all forward gears by performing the following steps:

**NOTE:**

In cases where the instrument cluster message indicates the transmission may not re-engage after engine shutdown, perform this procedure only in a desired location (preferably, at an authorized dealer).

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Shift the transmission into PARK, if possible. If not, shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
3. Push and hold the ignition switch until the engine turns OFF.
4. Wait approximately 30 seconds.

- Restart the engine.
- Shift into the desired gear range. If the problem is no longer detected, the transmission will return to normal operation.

**NOTE:**

Even if the transmission can be reset, we recommend that you visit an authorized dealer at your earliest possible convenience. An authorized dealer has diagnostic equipment to assess the condition of your transmission.

If the transmission cannot be reset, authorized dealer service is required.

**Electronic Range Select (ERS) Operation — Eight-Speed Transmission**

The Electronic Range Select (ERS) shift control allows the driver to limit the highest available gear when the transmission is in DRIVE. For example, if you set the transmission gear limit to 4 (fourth gear), the transmission will not shift above fourth gear (except to prevent engine overspeed), but will shift through the lower gears normally.

You can switch between DRIVE and ERS mode at any vehicle speed. When the transmission gear selector is in DRIVE, the trans-

mission will operate automatically, shifting between all available gears. Tapping the GEAR- switch (on the steering wheel) will activate ERS mode, display the current gear in the instrument cluster, and set that gear as the top available gear. Once in ERS mode, tapping the GEAR- or GEAR+ switch will change the top available gear.



**ERS Control**

1 — GEAR + Switch 2 — GEAR – Switch

To exit ERS mode, simply push and hold the GEAR+ switch until the gear limit display disappears from the instrument cluster.

**WARNING!**

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. The drive wheels could lose their grip and the vehicle could skid, causing a collision or personal injury.

**FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE OPERATION — IF EQUIPPED**

- Four-wheel drive trucks are equipped with either a manually shifted transfer case or an electronically shifted transfer case. Refer to the operating instructions for electronic transfer case, located in this section for further information.
- For further information on the manually shifted transfer case, refer to “Four Wheel Drive Operation” in “Starting And Operating” in your Owner’s Manual.



### Four-Position Electronically Shifted Transfer Case — If Equipped

This is an electronic shift transfer case and is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



**Four-Position Transfer Case**

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive High Range (4WD HIGH)

- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

#### 2WD

Rear-Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry hard surfaced roads.

#### 4WD HIGH

Four-Wheel Drive High Range — This range provides torque to the front driveshaft (engages four-wheel drive) which allows front and rear wheels to spin at the same speed. This provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.

#### 4WD LOW

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque (increased torque over 4WD HIGH) to the front driveshaft; allowing front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h) in this range.

#### NEUTRAL (N)

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in this section for further information.



#### WARNING!

- You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear drive shaft from the powertrain, and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

*(Continued)*



## WARNING! (Continued)

- The transmission may not engage PARK if the vehicle is moving. Always bring the vehicle to a complete stop before shifting to PARK, and verify that the transmission gear position indicator solidly indicates PARK (P) without blinking. Ensure that the vehicle is completely stopped, and the PARK position is properly indicated, before exiting the vehicle.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry hard surfaced roads). Driving the vehicle in 2WD will have greater fuel economy benefits as the front axle is not engaged in 2WD.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD HIGH and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by pushing the desired position on the 4WD control switch.

Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in the “Starting And Operating” section of your Owner’s Manual for specific shifting instructions.

### Electronically Shifted Transfer Case (Four-Position Switch) – If Equipped

The electronic shift transfer case is operated by the 4WD Control Switch (Transfer Case Switch), which is located on the instrument panel.



**Four-Position/On-Demand Transfer Case**

This electronically shifted transfer case provides four mode positions:

- Two-Wheel Drive High Range (2WD)
- Four-Wheel Drive High Range (4WD HIGH)
- Four-Wheel Drive Low Range (4WD LOW)
- Neutral (NEUTRAL)

For additional information on the appropriate use of each transfer case mode position, see the information below:

#### 2WD

Rear Wheel Drive High Range — This range is for normal street and highway driving on dry, hard surfaced roads.

#### 4WD HIGH

Four-Wheel Drive High Range — This range maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction for loose, slippery road surfaces only.



**4WD LOW**

Four-Wheel Drive Low Range — This range provides low speed four-wheel drive. It maximizes torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This range provides additional traction and maximum pulling power for loose, slippery road surfaces only. Do not exceed 25 mph (40 km/h).

**NEUTRAL (N)**

Neutral — This range disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain. To be used for flat towing behind another vehicle. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in this section for further information.

**WARNING!**

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL position disengages both the front and rear drive shafts from the powertrain and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the transmission is in PARK. The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.

This electronically shifted transfer case is designed to be driven in the two-wheel drive position (2WD) for normal street and highway conditions on dry, hard surfaced roads.

When additional traction is required, the transfer case 4WD HIGH and 4WD LOW positions can be used to maximize torque to the front driveshaft, forcing the front and rear wheels to rotate at the same speed. This is accomplished by rotating the 4WD Control Switch to the desired position.

Refer to “Shifting Procedure” in the “Starting And Operating” section of your Owner’s Manual for specific shifting instructions.

**SPEED CONTROL**

When engaged, the Speed Control takes over accelerator operations at speeds greater than 20 mph (32 km/h).

The Speed Control buttons are located on the right side of the steering wheel.

**Speed Control Buttons**

- 1 — On/Off Button      3 — SET (-)  
2 — RES (+)            4 — CANCEL

**NOTE:**

In order to ensure proper operation, the Speed Control System has been designed to shut down if multiple speed control functions are operated at the same time. If this occurs, the Speed Control System can be reactivated by pushing the Speed Control On/Off button and resetting the desired vehicle set speed.



## WARNING!

Speed Control can be dangerous where the system cannot maintain a constant speed. Your vehicle could go too fast for the conditions, and you could lose control and have an accident. Do not use Speed Control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered or slippery.

### To Activate

Push the On/Off button to activate the Speed Control. The cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster display will illuminate. To turn the system off, push the On/Off button a second time. The cruise indicator light will turn off. The system should be turned off when not in use.



## WARNING!

Leaving the Speed Control system on when not in use is dangerous. You could accidentally set the system or cause it to go faster than you want. You could lose control and have an accident. Always leave the system off when you are not using it.

### To Set A Desired Speed

Turn the Speed Control on. When the vehicle has reached the desired speed, push the SET (-) button and release. Release the accelerator and the vehicle will operate at the selected speed.

#### NOTE:

The vehicle should be traveling at a steady speed and on level ground before pushing the SET (-) button.

### To Resume Speed

To resume a previously set speed, push the RES (+) button and release. Resume can be used at any speed above 20 mph (32 km/h).

### To Deactivate

A soft tap on the brake pedal, pushing the CANCEL button, or normal brake pressure while slowing the vehicle will deactivate the Speed Control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Pushing the On/Off button, or returning the ignition to OFF, erases the set speed from memory.

## ADAPTIVE CRUISE CONTROL (ACC) – IF EQUIPPED



### Adaptive Cruise Control Buttons

- 1 — Adaptive Cruise Control On/Off Button
- 2 — Distance Button

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) increases the driving convenience provided by cruise control while traveling on highways and major roadways. However, it is not a safety



system and not designed to prevent collisions. **Speed Control function performs differently. Please refer to the proper section within this chapter.**

ACC will allow you to keep cruise control engaged in light to moderate traffic conditions without the constant need to reset your cruise control. ACC utilizes a radar sensor and a forward facing camera designed to detect a vehicle directly ahead of you.

**NOTE:**

- If the sensor does not detect a vehicle ahead of you, ACC will maintain a fixed set speed.
- If the ACC sensor detects a vehicle ahead, ACC will apply limited braking or accelerate (not to exceed the original set speed) automatically to maintain a preset following distance, while matching the speed of the vehicle ahead.

The Cruise Control system has two control modes:

- Adaptive Cruise Control mode for maintaining an appropriate distance between vehicles.

- Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control mode for cruising at a constant preset speed. For additional information, refer to “Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control Mode” in this section.

**NOTE:**

Normal (Fixed Speed) Cruise Control will not react to preceding vehicles. Always be aware of the mode selected.

You can change the mode by using the Cruise Control buttons. The two control modes function differently. Always confirm which mode is selected.



**WARNING!**

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) is a convenience system. It is not a substitute for active driving involvement. It is always the driver's responsibility to be attentive of road, traffic, and weather conditions, vehicle speed, distance to the vehicle ahead; and, most importantly, brake operation to ensure safe operation of the vehicle under all road conditions. Your complete attention is always required while driving to maintain safe control of your vehicle. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- The ACC system:
  - Does not react to pedestrians, oncoming vehicles, and stationary objects (e.g., a stopped vehicle in a traffic jam or a disabled vehicle).
  - Cannot take street, traffic, and weather conditions into account, and may be limited upon adverse sight distance conditions.
  - Does not always fully recognize complex driving conditions, which can result in wrong or missing distance warnings.

*(Continued)*



## WARNING! (Continued)

- ❑ Will bring the vehicle to a complete stop while following a target vehicle and hold the vehicle for approximately two seconds in the stop position. At this point, there will be an “ACC may cancel soon” chime and warning to the driver. When ACC is cancelled, the system will release the brakes and the driver must take over braking. The system can be resumed when the target vehicle drives off by releasing the brake and pushing the resume button on the steering wheel.

You should switch off the ACC system:

- ❑ When driving in fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, sleet, heavy traffic, and complex driving situations (i.e., in highway construction zones).
- ❑ When entering a turn lane or highway off ramp; when driving on roads that are winding, icy, snow-covered, slippery, or have steep uphill or downhill slopes.
- ❑ When towing a trailer up or down steep slopes.
- ❑ When circumstances do not allow safe driving at a constant speed.

## Activating Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

You can only engage ACC if the vehicle speed is above 0 mph (0 km/h).

The minimum set speed for the ACC system is 20 mph (32 km/h).

When the system is turned on and in the ready state, the instrument cluster display will read “ACC Ready.”

When the system is off, the instrument cluster display will read “Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Off.”

### NOTE:

You cannot engage ACC under the following conditions:

- ❑ When in Four-Wheel Drive Low.
- ❑ When you apply the brakes.
- ❑ When the parking brake is applied.
- ❑ When the automatic transmission is in PARK, REVERSE or NEUTRAL.
- ❑ When the vehicle speed is outside of the speed range.
- ❑ When the brakes are overheated.
- ❑ When the driver door is open at low speed.

- ❑ When the driver seat belt is unbuckled at low speed.

- ❑ ESC Full-Off Mode is active.

## To Set A Desired ACC Speed

When the vehicle reaches the speed desired, push the SET (-) button and release. The instrument cluster display will show the set speed.

If the system is set when the vehicle speed is below 20 mph (32 km/h), the set speed shall be defaulted to 20 mph (32 km/h). If the system is set when the vehicle speed is above 20 mph (32 km/h), the set speed shall be the current speed of the vehicle.

### NOTE:

ACC cannot be set if there is a stationary vehicle in front of your vehicle in close proximity.

Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal, after the ACC has been set. If you do not, the vehicle may continue to accelerate beyond the set speed. If this occurs:

- ❑ The message “ACC DRIVER OVERRIDE” will display in the instrument cluster display.



- The system will not be controlling the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead. The vehicle speed will only be determined by the position of the accelerator pedal.

### To Resume

If there is a set speed in memory push the RES (+) button and then remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. The instrument cluster display will display the last set speed.

### NOTE:

- If your vehicle stays at standstill for longer than two seconds, the driver will have to push the RES (+) button to reengage the ACC to the existing set speed.
- ACC cannot be resumed if there is a stationary vehicle in-front of your vehicle in close proximity.



### WARNING!

The Resume function should only be used if traffic and road conditions permit. Resuming a set speed that is too high or too low for prevailing traffic and road conditions could cause the vehicle to accelerate or decelerate too sharply for safe operation. Failure to follow these warnings can result in a collision and death or serious personal injury.

### To Vary The Speed Setting

#### To Increase Speed

While ACC is set, you can increase the set speed by pushing the RES (+) button.

The speed increment shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

#### *U.S. Speed (mph)*

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 mph increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 mph.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase in 5 mph increments until the button is released. The increase in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

#### *Metric Speed (km/h)*

- Pushing the RES (+) button once will result in a 1 km/h increase in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in an increase of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to increase in 10 km/h increments until the button is released. The increase in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

#### To Decrease Speed

While ACC is set, the set speed can be decreased by pushing the SET (-) button.

The speed decrement shown is dependant on the chosen speed unit of U.S. (mph) or Metric (km/h):

#### *U.S. Speed (mph)*

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 mph decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 mph.

- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease in 5 mph increments until the button is released. The decrease in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

#### *Metric Speed (km/h)*

- Pushing the SET (-) button once will result in a 1 km/h decrease in set speed. Each subsequent tap of the button results in a decrease of 1 km/h.
- If the button is continually pushed, the set speed will continue to decrease in 10 km/h increments until the button is released. The decrease in set speed is reflected in the instrument cluster display.

#### **NOTE:**

- When you override and push the RES (+) button or SET (-) buttons, the new set speed will be the current speed of the vehicle.
- When you use the SET (-) button to decelerate, if the engine's braking power does not slow the vehicle sufficiently to reach the set speed, the brake system will automatically slow the vehicle.
- The ACC system decelerates the vehicle to a full stop when following a target vehicle. If

an ACC host vehicle follows a target vehicle to a standstill, after two seconds the driver will either have to push the RES (+) button, or apply the accelerator pedal to reengage the ACC to the existing set speed.

- The ACC system maintains set speed when driving up hill and down hill. However, a slight speed change on moderate hills is normal. In addition, downshifting may occur while climbing uphill or descending downhill. This is normal operation and necessary to maintain set speed. When driving up hill and down hill, the ACC system will cancel if the braking temperature exceeds normal range (overheated).

#### **Setting The Following Distance In ACC**

The specified following distance for ACC can be set by varying the distance setting between four bars (longest), three bars (long), two bars (medium) and one bar (short). Using this distance setting and the vehicle speed, ACC calculates and sets the distance to the vehicle ahead. This distance setting displays in the instrument cluster display.

The system automatically defaults to the longest distance setting. To decrease the distance setting, push the Distance Button

and release. Each time the button is pushed, the distance setting decreases by one bar. Once the shortest setting is reached, if the button is pushed again it will reset to the default setting (longest).

If there is no vehicle ahead, the vehicle will maintain the set speed. If a slower moving vehicle is detected in the same lane, the instrument cluster displays the "Sensed Vehicle Indicator" icon, and the system adjusts vehicle speed automatically to maintain the distance setting, regardless of the set speed.

The vehicle will then maintain the set distance until:

- The vehicle ahead accelerates to a speed above the set speed.
- The vehicle ahead moves out of your lane or view of the sensor.
- The distance setting is changed.
- The system disengages. (Refer to the information on ACC Activation).

The maximum braking applied by ACC is limited; however, the driver can always apply the brakes manually, if necessary.



**NOTE:**

The brake lights will illuminate whenever the ACC system applies the brakes.

A Proximity Warning will alert the driver if ACC predicts that its maximum braking level is not sufficient to maintain the set distance. If this occurs, a visual alert “BRAKE” will flash in the instrument cluster display and a chime will sound while ACC continues to apply its maximum braking capacity.

**NOTE:**

The “Brake!” Screen in the instrument cluster display is a warning for the driver to take action and does not necessarily mean that the Forward Collision Warning system is applying the brakes autonomously.

**Trailer Detect — If Equipped**

When a trailer is detected, the ACC system automatically defaults to the longest setting (four bars). The setting can be overridden by pushing the Distance Button on the steering wheel.

**General Information**

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference.
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

**NOTE:**

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user’s authority to operate the equipment.

**PARKSENSE REAR PARK ASSIST — IF EQUIPPED**

The ParkSense Rear Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear fascia and a detected obstacle when backing up, e.g. during a parking maneuver. Refer to “ParkSense System Usage Precautions” in this section for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE. If ParkSense is enabled at this gear selector position, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph (11 km/h) or above. When in REVERSE and above the system’s operating speed, a warning will appear within the instrument cluster display indicating the vehicle speed is too fast. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

**ParkSense Sensors**

For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the rear ParkSense sensors are shipped loose. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

The four ParkSense sensors are to be located in the rear fascia/bumper, and monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors’ field of view.

The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 18 inches (45 cm) up to 79 inches (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

**NOTE:**

If equipped as a dually, the ParkSense system has six rear sensors to assist in detection around the dually flares.

**ParkSense Display**

When the vehicle is in REVERSE, the warning display will turn on indicating the system status.

The system will indicate a detected obstacle by showing a single arc in the left and/or right rear regions based on the object's distance and location relative to the vehicle.

If an object is detected in the left and/or right rear region, the display will show a single solid arc in the left and/or right rear

region and the system will produce a tone. As the vehicle moves closer to the object, the display will show the single arc moving closer to the vehicle and the tone will change from a single 1/2 second tone to slow, to fast, to continuous.

The vehicle is close to the obstacle when the warning display shows one flashing arc and sounds a continuous tone. The following chart shows the warning alert operation when the system is detecting an obstacle:

WARNING ALERTS							
Rear Distance (inches/cm)	Greater than 79 inches (200 cm)	79-59 inches (200-150 cm)	59-47 inches (150-120 cm)	47-39 inches (120-100 cm)	39-25 inches (100-65 cm)	25-12 inches (65-30 cm)	Less than 12 inches (30 cm)
Audible Alert Chime	None	Single 1/2 Second Tone	Slow	Slow	Fast	Fast	Continuous
Arcs-Left	None	None	None	None	None	2nd Flashing	1st Flashing
Arcs-Center	None	6th Solid	5th Solid	4th Solid	3rd Flashing	2nd Flashing	1st Flashing
Arcs-Right	None	None	None	None	None	2nd Flashing	1st Flashing
Radio Volume Reduced	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

**NOTE:**

ParkSense will reduce the volume of the radio, if on, when the system is sounding an audio tone.



## Adjustable Chime Volume Settings

The rear chime volume settings are programmable through the Uconnect system. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

The chime volume settings include low, medium, and high. The factory default volume is medium.

## Enabling And Disabling ParkSense

ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the ParkSense switch.

**P** When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the system is disabled, the instrument cluster display will show the vehicle graphic with “Off” over the arcs for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

### NOTE:

The ParkSense system will automatically disable when the system detects that a trailer with trailer brakes has been connected to the Integrated Trailer Brake Module. The instrument cluster display will show an “Off” message over the arcs if the ParkSense system is off, or a “Trailer” message if the system is on, for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

The ParkSense switch LED will be on when ParkSense is disabled or defective. The ParkSense switch LED will be off when the system is enabled.

If the ParkSense switch is pushed, and the system is disabled or requires service, the ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be on.

## ParkSense System Usage Precautions

### NOTE:

- Ensure that the rear bumper is free of snow, ice, mud, dirt and debris to keep the ParkSense system operating properly.
- Jackhammers, large trucks, and other vibrations could affect the performance of ParkSense.
- When you move the gear selector into REVERSE with ParkSense turned off, the instrument cluster display will show "Off" on the vehicle graphic arcs for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.
- ParkSense, when on, will reduce the volume of the radio when it is sounding a tone.

- Clean the ParkSense sensors regularly, taking care not to scratch or damage them. The sensors must not be covered with ice, snow, slush, mud, dirt or debris. Failure to do so can result in the system not working properly. The ParkSense system might not detect an obstacle behind the fascia/bumper, or it could provide a false indication that an obstacle is behind the fascia/bumper.
- Ensure the ParkSense system is OFF if objects such as bicycle carriers, trailer hitches, etc., are placed within 18 inches (45 cm) of the rear fascia/bumper while driving the vehicle. Failure to do so can result in the system misinterpreting a close obstacle as a sensor problem, causing the "Rear ParkSense Unavailable Service Required" message to appear in the instrument cluster display.



## WARNING!

- Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using ParkSense. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, look behind you, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, and blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for safety and must continue to pay attention to your surroundings. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.
- Before using ParkSense, it is strongly recommended that the ball mount and hitch ball assembly is disconnected from the vehicle when the vehicle is not used for towing. Failure to do so can result in injury or damage to vehicles or obstacles because the hitch ball will be much closer to the obstacle than the rear fascia when the loudspeaker sounds the continuous tone. Also, the sensors could detect the ball mount and hitch ball assembly, depending on its size and shape, giving a false indication that an obstacle is behind the vehicle.



## CAUTION!

- ParkSense is only a parking aid and it is unable to recognize every obstacle, including small obstacles. Parking curbs might be temporarily detected or not detected at all. Obstacles located above or below the sensors will not be detected when they are in close proximity.
- The vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkSense in order to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is detected. It is recommended that the driver looks over his/her shoulder when using ParkSense.

## PARKSENSE FRONT AND REAR PARK ASSIST

The ParkSense Park Assist system provides visual and audible indications of the distance between the rear, and/or front fascia/bumper, and a detected obstacle when backing up or moving forward, e.g. during a parking maneuver.

Refer to “ParkSense System Usage Precautions” in “Starting And Operating” in the

Owner’s Manual for limitations of this system and recommendations.

ParkSense will retain the last system state (enabled or disabled) from the last ignition cycle when the ignition is changed to the ON/RUN position.

ParkSense can be active only when the gear selector is in REVERSE or DRIVE. If ParkSense is enabled at one of these gear selector positions, the system will remain active until the vehicle speed is increased to approximately 7 mph (11 km/h) or above. A warning will appear in the instrument cluster display when the vehicle is in REVERSE, indicating the vehicle is above ParkSense operating speed. The system will become active again if the vehicle speed is decreased to speeds less than approximately 6 mph (9 km/h).

### ParkSense Sensors

For the 3500, 4500 and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the rear ParkSense sensors are shipped loose. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.



The four ParkSense sensors are to be located in the rear fascia/bumper, and monitor the area behind the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view.

The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 18 inches (45 cm) up to 79 inches (200 cm) from the rear fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

**NOTE:**

If equipped as a dually, the ParkSense system has six rear sensors to assist in detection around the dually flares.

The six ParkSense sensors, located in the front fascia/bumper, monitor the area in front of the vehicle that is within the sensors' field of view. The sensors can detect obstacles from approximately 12 inches (30 cm) up to 47 inches (120 cm) from the front fascia/bumper in the horizontal direction, depending on the location, type and orientation of the obstacle.

**Enabling And Disabling Front And/Or Rear ParkSense**

Front ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the Front ParkSense switch.

Rear ParkSense can be enabled and disabled with the Rear ParkSense switch.



When the gear selector is moved to REVERSE and the Front or Rear system is disabled, the instrument cluster display will show the "Off" message. This vehicle graphic will be displayed for as long as the vehicle is in REVERSE.

The Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will be on when Front or Rear ParkSense is disabled or requires service. The Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will be off when the Front or Rear system is enabled. If the Front or Rear ParkSense switch is pushed, and the system requires service, the Front or Rear ParkSense switch LED will blink momentarily, and then the LED will be on.


**PARKVIEW REAR BACK UP CAMERA**

Your vehicle may be equipped with the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera that allows you to see a image of the rear surroundings of your vehicle whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE or whenever it is initiated through the "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu. Whenever the gear selector

is put into REVERSE, the image will be displayed in the rearview mirror display (if equipped) or Uconnect screen (if equipped). If the image is displayed in the Uconnect screen, a caution note to "check entire surroundings" will display across the top of the screen. After five seconds this note will disappear.

**NOTE:**For the 3500, 4500, and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the Rear Backup Camera is shipped loose and not installed. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.

**Manual Activation Of The Rear View Camera:**

1. Press the "Controls" button located on the bottom of the Uconnect display.
2. Press the "Backup Camera" button  to turn the Rear View Camera system on.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned off), the rear Camera mode is exited and the previous screen appears again.


When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with Camera delay turned on), the rear Camera image will be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting to another gear, unless


the vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h), the transmission is shifted into PARK, the ignition is switched to the OFF position, or the touchscreen button “X” to disable display of the Rear View Camera image is pressed.

Whenever the Rear View Camera image is activated through the "Backup Camera" button in the "Controls" menu, and the vehicle speed is greater than, or equal to, 8 mph (13 km/h), a display timer for the image is initiated. The image will continue to be displayed until the display timer exceeds 10 seconds.

**NOTE:**

- If the vehicle speed remains below 8 mph (13 km/h), the Rear View Camera image will be displayed continuously until deactivated via the touchscreen button "X", the transmission is shifted into PARK, or the ignition is cycled to the OFF position.
- The touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the camera image is made available ONLY when the vehicle is not in REVERSE.

If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button  to indicate the current active Camera image being displayed is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.


If equipped with a Cargo Camera, a touchscreen button  to switch the display to Cargo Camera image is made available whenever the Rear View Camera image is displayed.

A touchscreen button "X" to disable display of the camera image is made available when the vehicle is not in REVERSE gear.


When enabled, active guide lines are overlaid on the backup camera image to illustrate the width of the vehicle and its projected backup path based on the steering wheel position. The active guide lines will show separate zones that will help indicate the distance to the rear of the vehicle.

**NOTE:**

For further information about how to access and change the programmable features of the ParkView Rear Backup Camera, refer to “Uconnect Settings ” in “Multimedia” in the Owner’s Manual.

 **WARNING!**

Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the ParkView Rear Back Up Camera. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for the safety of your surroundings and must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

 **CAUTION!**

- To avoid vehicle damage, ParkView should only be used as a parking aid. The ParkView camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.
- To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using ParkView to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using ParkView.



**NOTE:**

If snow, ice, mud, or any foreign substance builds up on the camera lens, clean the lens, rinse with water, and dry with a soft cloth. Do not cover the lens.

**Zoom View**

When the Rear View Camera image is being displayed, and the vehicle speed is below 8 mph (13 km/h) while in any gear selector position, Zoom View is available. By pressing the “magnifying glass” icon in the upper left of the display screen, the image will zoom in to four times the standard view. Pressing the icon a second time will return the view to the standard Backup Camera display.

When Zoom View is selected while the vehicle is in REVERSE, then shifted to DRIVE, the camera delay view will display the standard Backup Camera view. If the vehicle is then returned to REVERSE gear from DRIVE, the Zoom View selection will automatically resume.

Shifting to NEUTRAL from any gear will maintain the selected view (Zoom or Standard) as long as the vehicle is below 8 mph (13 km/h).

If the vehicle is in PARK, Zoom View is available until the gear selector is placed in DRIVE or REVERSE and speeds are at or above 8 mph (13 km/h).

**NOTE:**

- If the vehicle is in DRIVE, NEUTRAL, or REVERSE, and speed is greater than or equal to 8 mph (13 km/h), Zoom View is unavailable and the icon will appear grey.
- While in Zoom View, the guidelines will not be visible.

**AUX Camera — If Equipped**

Your vehicle may be equipped with a single AUX Camera, which displays a rearview image from the trailer on the touchscreen.

**Activating AUX Camera**

**Backup Camera Only:** The AUX Camera is activated by first pressing the Backup Camera button on the touchscreen, followed by the AUX button located in the upper left corner of the rearview display. The AUX camera can also be activated when the vehicle is in REVERSE by pressing the AUX button.

**Surround View Camera:** The AUX Camera is activated by first pressing the Cargo Camera button on the touchscreen, followed by the AUX button located in the upper left corner of the rearview display. The AUX Camera can also be activated by pressing the Backup Camera button or Surround View Camera

button on the touchscreen, followed by the AUX button.

**Deactivation**

The AUX Camera is deactivated by pressing the “X” in the upper right corner of the touchscreen. This will return the display back to the previously displayed screen.

**NOTE:**

- If the AUX button is pressed and no AUX Camera is connected, the touchscreen will display a blue screen along with the message “Camera System Unavailable.” The screen can be exited out by pressing the “X” in the upper right hand corner. This will return the display back to the previously displayed screen.
- Zoom View is not available with the AUX Camera feature.
- The display will always default to the Trailer Camera display (AUX 1).
- The “X” button is not available when the vehicle is in REVERSE unless it is acting as a back button within camera views. The camera image must always be displayed when the vehicle is in REVERSE.

## SURROUND VIEW CAMERA SYSTEM – IF EQUIPPED

Your vehicle may be equipped with the Surround View Camera System that allows you to see an on-screen image of the surroundings and top view of your vehicle whenever the gear selector is put into REVERSE or a different view is selected through the "on screen soft buttons". The top view of the vehicle will show which doors are open. The image will be displayed on the touchscreen display along with a caution note "Check Entire Surroundings" across the top of the screen. After five seconds, this note will disappear. The Surround View Camera System is comprised of three sequential cameras located in the front grille and side mirrors, in addition to a fourth Rear Back Up Camera.

### NOTE:

- For the 3500, 4500, and 5500 Chassis Cab vehicles, the Rear Backup Camera is shipped loose and not installed. Please refer to the Ram Body Builders Guide for more information.
- The Surround View Camera System has programmable settings that may be

selected through the Uconnect System. Refer to "Uconnect Settings" in "Multi-media" in the Owner's Manual for further information.

When the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE, the rear camera view and top view is the default view of the system (Automatic Activation).

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned on), the camera image will continue to be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting out of REVERSE unless the vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h), the vehicle is shifted into PARK or the ignition is switched to the OFF position. There is a touch screen button (X) to disable the display of the camera image.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned off), the surround view camera mode is exited and the last known screen appears again.

While the "rear view" is displayed, and if enabled, active guide lines are overlaid on the image to illustrate the width of the vehicle, including the side view mirrors and its projected backup path based on the steering wheel position.

Different colored zones indicate the distance to the rear of the vehicle.

### Modes Of Operation

Standard Backup Camera view can be manually activated by selecting "Backup Camera" through the Controls menu within the Uconnect screen.

Refer to "Parkview Rear Back Up Camera" in this section for more information on activation conditions.

#### *Top View*

The Top view will show in the Uconnect System with Rear View and Front View in a split view display. There are integrated ParkSense arcs in the image at the front and rear of the vehicle. The arcs will change color from yellow to red corresponding the distance zones to the oncoming object.

The fifth button of the ParkSense Camera View screen will be changed based on the cameras present in the vehicle. If not equipped with a Cargo Camera or Trailer Reverse Guidance, the Backup Camera soft button will be displayed. If equipped with a Cargo Camera but no Trailer Reverse Guidance, the Cargo Camera soft button will be displayed, and if equipped with both a Cargo



Camera and Trailer Reverse Guidance, the Trailer Reverse Guidance soft button will be displayed.

**NOTE:**

- Front tires will be in image when the tires are turned.
- Due to wide angle cameras in mirror, the image will appear distorted.
- Top view will show which doors are open.
- Open front doors will remove outside image.

**Zoom View**

When the Rear View Camera image is being displayed, and the vehicle speed is below 8 mph (13 km/h) while in any gear selector position, Zoom View is available. By pressing the “magnifying glass” icon in the upper left of the display screen, the image will zoom in to four times the standard view. Pressing the icon a second time will return the view to the standard Backup Camera display.

When Zoom View is selected while the vehicle is in REVERSE, then shifted to DRIVE, the camera delay view will display the standard Backup Camera view. If the vehicle is then returned to REVERSE gear

from DRIVE, the Zoom View selection will automatically resume.

Shifting to NEUTRAL from any gear will maintain the selected view (Zoom or Standard) as long as the vehicle is below 8 mph (13 km/h).

If the vehicle is in PARK, Zoom View is available until the gear selector is placed in DRIVE or REVERSE and speeds are at or above 8 mph (13 km/h).

**NOTE:**

- If the vehicle is in DRIVE, NEUTRAL, or REVERSE, and speed is greater than or equal to 8 mph (13 km/h), Zoom View is unavailable and the icon will appear grey.
- While in Zoom View, the guidelines will not be visible.

**Deactivation**

The system is deactivated in the following conditions if it was activated **automatically**:

- When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned on), the camera image will continue to be displayed for up to 10 seconds after shifting out of REVERSE unless the vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h),

the vehicle is shifted into PARK or the ignition is switched to the OFF position. There is a touch screen button (X) to disable the display of the camera image.

- When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (with camera delay turned off), the surround view camera mode is exited and the last known screen appears again.

The system is deactivated in the following conditions if it was activated **manually** from the Uconnect controls menu via Surround View button or Backup Camera button:

- The "X" button on the display is pressed
- Vehicle is shifted into PARK
- Ignition is cycled to OFF
- Vehicle speed is over 8 mph (13 km/h) for 10 seconds

**NOTE:**

If the Surround View Camera is activated manually, and the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE, deactivation methods for automatic activation are assumed.

The camera delay system is turned off manually through the Uconnect settings menu. Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-

media” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

**NOTE:**

- If snow, ice, mud, or any foreign substance builds up on the camera lenses, clean the lenses, rinse with water, and dry with a soft cloth. Do not cover the lenses.
- If a malfunction with the system has occurred, see your nearest authorized dealer.

**Forward Facing Camera With Tire Lines — If Equipped**

The Forward Facing Camera displays a front view image of the road ahead, along with tire lines to guide the driver when driving on narrow roads.

**Activation**

The Forward Facing Camera can be activated by pressing the Forward Camera soft button on the touchscreen.

Once activated, the camera image will remain on as long as the vehicle speed is below 8 mph (13 km/h).

**Deactivation**

The Forward Facing Camera is deactivated in the following conditions:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h) for 10 seconds.
- The “X” button on the display is pressed.
- Vehicle is shifted into PARK.
- Ignition is cycled to OFF.

**NOTE:**

The Forward Facing Camera cannot be deactivated when the vehicle is in 4LO.

**Trailer Reverse Guidance — If Equipped**


The Trailer Reverse Guidance feature assists the driver in backing up a trailer by providing adjustable camera views of the trailer and surrounding area. The cameras are mounted on the side mirrors and the images will be displayed side-by-side on the touchscreen. Left and right camera images are swapped and mirrored on the touchscreen to show the equivalent area behind the vehicle as though the driver is using the side mirrors.

**Activation**


The Trailer Reverse Guidance feature can be activated by pressing the Trailer Reverse Guidance button on the touchscreen.

**Deactivation**

Once activated, the image will continue to be displayed in any gear until the vehicle speed exceeds 8 mph (13 km/h).

 **WARNING!**

Drivers must be careful when backing up even when using the Surround View Camera. Always check carefully behind your vehicle, and be sure to check for pedestrians, animals, other vehicles, obstructions, or blind spots before backing up. You are responsible for the safety of your surroundings and must continue to pay attention while backing up. Failure to do so can result in serious injury or death.

 **CAUTION!**

□ To avoid vehicle damage, Surround View should only be used as a parking aid. The Surround View camera is unable to view every obstacle or object in your drive path.

*(Continued)*



**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- To avoid vehicle damage, the vehicle must be driven slowly when using Surround View to be able to stop in time when an obstacle is seen. It is recommended that the driver look frequently over his/her shoulder when using Surround View.

**REFUELING THE VEHICLE — GAS****CAUTION!**

- Damage to the fuel system or emissions control system could result from using an improper fuel tank filler tube cap (fuel filler cap). A poorly fitting cap could let impurities into the fuel system. Also, a poorly-fitted aftermarket cap can cause the MIL (Malfunction Indicator Light) to illuminate due to fuel vapors escaping from the system.
- A poorly fitting fuel filler cap may cause the MIL to turn on.
- To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not “top off” the fuel tank after filling.

**NOTE:**

When the fuel nozzle “clicks” or shuts off the fuel tank is full.

**WARNING!**

- Never have any smoking materials lit in or near the vehicle when the gas cap is removed or the tank is being filled.
- Never add fuel to the vehicle when the engine is running. This is in violation of most state and federal fire regulations and may cause the MIL to turn on.

**NOTE:**

Tighten the gas cap ¼ turn until you hear one click. This is an indication that the cap is properly tightened.

If the gas cap is not tightened properly, the Malfunction Indicator Light will come on. Be sure the gas cap is tightened every time the vehicle is refueled.

**WARNING!**

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

**Materials Added To Fuel**

Designated TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline contains a higher level of detergents to further aide in minimizing engine and fuel system deposits. When available, the usage of TOP TIER Detergent gasoline is recommended. Visit [www.toptiergas.com](http://www.toptiergas.com) for a list of TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline Retailers.

Indiscriminate use of fuel system cleaning agents should be avoided. Many of these materials intended for gum and varnish removal may contain active solvents or similar ingredients. These can harm fuel system gasket and diaphragm materials.

## REFUELING THE VEHICLE — DIESEL CHASSIS CAB MODELS



### CAUTION!

To avoid fuel spillage and overfilling, do not “top off” the fuel tank after filling.

### NOTE:

- When the fuel nozzle “clicks” or shuts off, the fuel tank is full.
- Tighten the fuel filler cap until you hear a “clicking” sound. This is an indication that the fuel filler cap is properly tightened.
- Make sure that the fuel filler cap is tightened each time the vehicle is refueled.



### WARNING!

A fire may result if gasoline is pumped into a portable container that is inside of a vehicle. You could be burned. Always place gas containers on the ground while filling.

## Diesel Exhaust Fluid

Your vehicle is equipped with a Selective Catalytic Reduction system to meet the very stringent diesel emissions standards required by the Environmental Protection Agency.

The purpose of the SCR system is to reduce levels of NOx (oxides of nitrogen emitted from engines) that are harmful to our health and the environment to a near-zero level. A small quantity of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is injected into the exhaust upstream of a catalyst where, when vaporized, it converts smog-forming nitrogen oxides (NOx) into harmless nitrogen (N<sub>2</sub>) and water vapor (H<sub>2</sub>O), two natural components of the air we breathe. You can operate with the comfort that your vehicle is contributing to a cleaner, healthier world environment for this and generations to come.

## System Overview

This vehicle is equipped with a Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) injection system and a Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR) catalyst to meet the emission requirements.

The DEF injection system consists of the following components:

- DEF tank
- DEF pump
- DEF injector
- Electronically-heated DEF lines
- DEF control module
- NOx sensors
- Temperature sensors
- SCR catalyst
- UQS Sensor

Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for system messages and warnings.

### NOTE:

- Your vehicle is equipped with a DEF injection system. You may occasionally hear an audible clicking noise. This is normal operation.
- The DEF pump will run for a period of time after engine shutdown to purge the DEF system. This is normal operation.



## Diesel Exhaust Fluid Storage

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is considered a very stable product with a long shelf life. If DEF is kept in temperatures between 10° and 90°F (-12° and 32°C), it will last a minimum of one year.

DEF is subject to freezing at the lowest temperatures. For example, DEF may freeze at temperatures at or below 12° F (-11° C). The system has been designed to operate in this environment.

### NOTE:

When working with DEF, it is important to know that:

- Any containers or parts that come into contact with DEF must be DEF compatible (plastic or stainless steel). Copper, brass, aluminum, iron or non-stainless steel should be avoided as they are subject to corrosion by DEF.
- If DEF is spilled, it should be wiped up completely.

## Adding Diesel Exhaust Fluid

The DEF gauge (located on the instrument cluster) will display the level of DEF remaining in the tank. Refer to “Instrument Cluster” and “Instrument Cluster Descriptions” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

### NOTE:

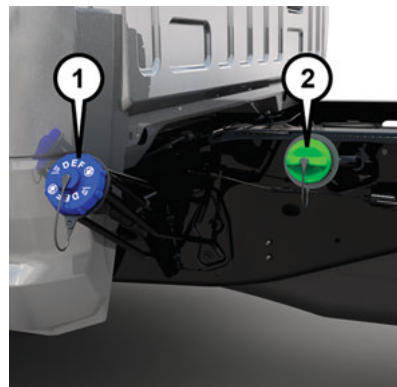
- Driving conditions (altitude, vehicle speed, load, etc.) will effect the amount of DEF that is used in your vehicle.
- Another factor is that outside temperature can affect DEF consumption. In cold conditions, 12° F (-11° C) and below, the DEF gauge needle can stay on a fixed position and may not move for extended periods of time. This is a normal function of the system.
- There is an electric heater inside the DEF tank that automatically works when necessary. And if the DEF supply does freeze, the truck will operate normally until it thaws.

## DEF Fill Procedure

### NOTE:

Refer to “Fluids And Lubricants” in “Technical Specifications” for the correct fluid type.

1. Remove cap from DEF tank (located on drivers side of the vehicle or in fuel door).



**Fill Locations**

- 1 — Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) Fill Location  
2 — Diesel Fuel Fill Location

2. Insert DEF fill adapter/nozzle into DEF tank filler neck.

**NOTE:**

- The DEF gauge may take up to five seconds to update after adding a gallon or more of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) to the DEF tank. If you have a fault related to the DEF system, the gauge may not update to the new level. See your authorized dealer for service.
- The DEF gauge may also not immediately update after a refill if the temperature of the DEF fluid is below 12F (-11C). The DEF line heater will possibly warm up the DEF fluid and allow the gauge to update after a period of run time. Under very cold conditions, it is possible that the gauge may not reflect the new fill level for several drives.

- Excessive overfilling of the DEF tank can result in a MIL lamp/fault code and inaccurate level readings.

**CAUTION!**

- To avoid DEF spillage, and possible damage to the DEF tank from overfilling, do not “top off” the DEF tank after filling.
- DO NOT OVERFILL. DEF will freeze below 12°F (-11°C). The DEF system is designed to work in temperatures below the DEF freezing point, however, if the tank is overfilled and freezes, the system could be damaged.
- When DEF is spilled, clean the area immediately with water and use an absorbent material to soak up the spills on the ground.
- Do not attempt to start your engine if DEF is accidentally added to the diesel fuel tank as it can result in severe damage to your engine, including but not limited to failure of the fuel pump and injectors.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Never add anything other than DEF to the tank – especially any form of hydrocarbon such as diesel fuel, fuel system additives, gasoline, or any other petroleum-based product. Even a very small amount of these, less than 100 parts per million or less than 1 oz. per 78 gallons (295 liters) will contaminate the entire DEF system and will require replacement. If owners use a container, funnel or nozzle when refilling the tank, it should either be new or one that has only been used for adding DEF. Mopar provides an attachable nozzle with its DEF for this purpose.

3. Stop filling the DEF tank immediately when any of the following happen: DEF stops flowing from the fill bottle into the DEF tank, DEF splashes out the filler neck, or a DEF pump nozzle automatically shuts off.
4. Reinstall cap onto DEF tank.

**Filling The Def Tank In Cold Climates**

Since DEF will begin to freeze at 12°F (-11°C), your vehicle is equipped with an automatic DEF



heating system. This allows the DEF injection system to operate properly at temperatures below 12°F (-11°C). If your vehicle is not in operation for an extended period of time with temperatures below 12°F (-11°C), the DEF in the tank may freeze. If the tank is overfilled and freezes, it could be damaged. Therefore, do not overfill the DEF tank.

Extra care should be taken when filling with portable containers to avoid overfilling. Note the level of the DEF gauge in your instrument cluster. You may safely add a maximum of 2 gallons (7.5 Liters) of DEF from portable containers when your DEF gauge is reading ½ full.

## TRAILER TOWING

### Trailer Towing Weights (Maximum Trailer Weight Ratings)

#### NOTE:

For trailer towing information (maximum trailer weight ratings) refer to the following website addresses:

- [ramtrucks.com/en/towing\\_guide/](http://ramtrucks.com/en/towing_guide/)
- [ramtruck.ca](http://ramtruck.ca) (Canada)
- [rambodybuilder.com](http://rambodybuilder.com)

### Towing Requirements

To promote proper break-in of your new vehicle drivetrain components, the following guidelines are recommended.



#### CAUTION!

- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (805 km) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (805 km) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and do not make starts at full throttle. This helps the engine and other parts of the vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.

Perform the maintenance listed in the “Scheduled Servicing”. Refer to “Scheduled Servicing” in “Servicing And Maintenance” for the proper maintenance intervals. When towing a trailer, never exceed the GAWR or GCWR ratings.



#### WARNING!

- Make certain that the load is secured in the trailer and will not shift during travel. When trailering cargo that is not fully secured, dynamic load shifts can occur that may be difficult for the driver to control. You could lose control of your vehicle and have a collision.
- When hauling cargo or towing a trailer, do not overload your vehicle or trailer. Overloading can cause a loss of control, poor performance or damage to brakes, axle, engine, transmission, steering, suspension, chassis structure or tires.
- Safety chains must always be used between your vehicle and trailer. Always connect the chains to the hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. Cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow enough slack for turning corners.
- Vehicles with trailers should not be parked on a grade. When parking, apply the parking brake on the tow vehicle. Put the tow vehicle transmission in PARK. For four-wheel drive vehicles, make sure the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL. Always, block or "chock" the trailer wheels.

(Continued)

 **WARNING! (Continued)**

- GCWR must not be exceeded.
- Total weight must be distributed between the tow vehicle and the trailer such that the following four ratings are not exceeded:**
- GVWR
- GTW
- GAWR
- Tongue weight rating for the trailer hitch utilized.

**Towing Requirements — Trailer Brakes**

- Do **not** interconnect the hydraulic brake system or vacuum system of your vehicle with that of the trailer. This could cause inadequate braking and possible personal injury.
- An electronically actuated trailer brake controller is required when towing a trailer with electronically actuated brakes. When towing a trailer equipped with a hydraulic surge actuated brake system, an electronic brake controller is not required.

- Trailer brakes are recommended for trailers over 1,000 lbs (453 kg) and required for trailers in excess of 2,000 lbs (907 kg).

 **WARNING!**

- Do not connect trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic brake lines. It can overload your brake system and cause it to fail. You might not have brakes when you need them and could have an accident.
- Towing any trailer will increase your stopping distance. When towing, you should allow for additional space between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you. Failure to do so could result in an accident.



**CAUTION!**

If the trailer weighs more than 1,000 lbs (453 kg) loaded, it should have its own brakes and they should be of adequate capacity. Failure to do this could lead to accelerated brake lining wear, higher brake pedal effort, and longer stopping distances.

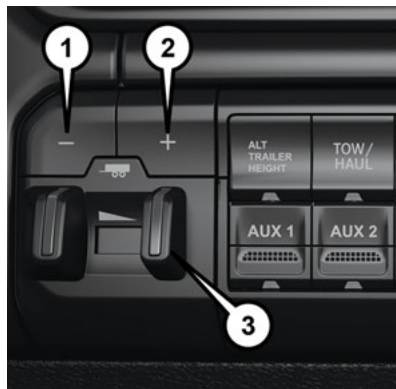


## Integrated Trailer Brake Module — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have an Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM) for Electric and Electric Over Hydraulic (EOH) trailer brakes.

### NOTE:

This module has been designed and verified with electric trailer brakes and new electric over hydraulic systems. Some previous EOH systems may not be compatible with ITBM.



**Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM)**

- 1 — GAIN Adjustment Button
- 2 — GAIN Adjustment Button
- 3 — Manual Brake Control Lever

The user interface consists of the following:

### Manual Brake Control Lever

Slide the manual brake control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes. If the manual brake control lever is activated while the brake is also applied, the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

The trailer and the vehicle's stop lamps will come on when braking normally with the vehicle brake pedal. Only the trailer stop lamps will come on when the manual brake control lever is applied.

### Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light

This light indicates the trailer electrical connection status.

If no electrical connection is detected after the ignition is turned on, pushing the GAIN adjustment button or sliding the manual brake control lever will display the GAIN setting for 10 seconds and the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will not be displayed.

If a fault is detected in the trailer wiring or the Integrated Trailer Brake Module (ITBM), the "Trailer Brake Status Indicator Light" will flash.

### GAIN Adjustment Buttons (+/-)

Pushing these buttons will adjust the brake control power output to the trailer brakes in 0.5 increments. The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking).

## GAIN

The GAIN setting is used to set the trailer brake control for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

### Adjusting GAIN

#### NOTE:

This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.
2. Hook up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

3. When a trailer with electric/EOH brakes is plugged in, the trailer connected message should appear in the instrument cluster display (if the connection is not recognized by the ITBM, braking functions will not be available), the GAIN setting will illuminate and the correct type of trailer must be selected from the instrument cluster display options.

4. Push the UP or DOWN button on the steering wheel until "TRAILER TOW" appears on the screen.
5. Push the RIGHT arrow on the steering wheel to enter "TRAILER TOW".
6. Push the UP or DOWN buttons until the Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.

7. Push the RIGHT arrow and then push the UP or DOWN buttons until the proper Trailer Brake Type appears on the screen.

8. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20–25 mph (30–40 km/h) and squeeze the manual brake control lever completely.

9. If the trailer wheels lockup (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting.

Repeat steps 8 and 9 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lockup. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

	Light Electric	Heavy Electric	Light EOH	Heavy EOH
Type of Trailer Brakes	Electric Trailer Brakes	Electric Trailer Brakes	Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes	Electric over Hydraulic Trailer Brakes
Load	*Under 10,000 lbs	*Above 10,000 lbs	*Under 10,000 lbs	*Above 10,000 lbs

\* The suggested selection depends and may change depending on the customer preferences for braking performance. Condition of the trailer brakes, driving and road state may also affect the selection.



## Display Messages

The trailer brake control interacts with the instrument cluster display. Display messages, along with a single chime, will be displayed when a malfunction is determined in the trailer connection, trailer brake control, or on the trailer. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.



### WARNING!

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in personal injury.



### CAUTION!

Connecting a trailer that is not compatible with the ITBM system may result in reduced or complete loss of trailer braking. There may be a increase in stopping distance or trailer instability which could result in damage to your vehicle, trailer, or other property.

### NOTE:

- An aftermarket controller may be available for use with trailers with air or electric-over-hydraulic trailer brake systems. To determine the type of brakes on your trailer and the availability of controllers, check with your trailer manufacturer or dealer.
- Removal of the ITBM will cause errors and it may cause damage to the electrical system and electronic modules of the vehicle. See your authorized dealer if an aftermarket module is to be installed.

# RECREATIONAL TOWING (BEHIND MOTORHOME, ETC.)

## Towing This Vehicle Behind Another Vehicle

Towing Condition	Wheels OFF The Ground	Two-Wheel Drive Models	Four-Wheel Drive Models
Flat Tow	NONE	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>See Instructions</b> <input type="checkbox"/> Automatic transmission in PARK <input type="checkbox"/> Transfer case in NEUTRAL (N) <input type="checkbox"/> Tow in forward direction
Dolly Tow	Front	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
	Rear	OK	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
On Trailer	ALL	OK	OK

### NOTE:

- When towing your vehicle, always follow applicable state and provincial laws. Contact state and provincial Highway Safety offices for additional details.

### Recreational Towing – Two-Wheel Drive Models

**DO NOT flat tow this vehicle. Damage to the drivetrain will result.**

Recreational towing (for two-wheel drive models) is allowed **ONLY** if the rear wheels

are **OFF** the ground. This may be accomplished using a tow dolly or vehicle trailer. If using a tow dolly, follow this procedure:

1. Properly secure the dolly to the tow vehicle, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
2. Drive the rear wheels onto the tow dolly.
3. Firmly apply the parking brake. Place automatic transmission in PARK.

4. Properly secure the rear wheels to the dolly, following the dolly manufacturer's instructions.
5. Turn the ignition OFF and remove the key fob.
6. Install a suitable clamping device, designed for towing, to secure the front wheels in the straight position.



**CAUTION!**

- Towing with the rear wheels on the ground will cause severe transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
- Do not disconnect the driveshaft because fluid may leak from the transmission, causing damage to internal parts.

**Recreational Towing – Four-Wheel Drive Models****NOTE:**

Both the manual shift and electronic shift transfer cases must be shifted into NEUTRAL (N) for recreational towing. Automatic transmissions must be shifted into PARK for recreational towing. Refer to the following for the proper transfer case NEUTRAL (N) shifting procedure for your vehicle.

**CAUTION!**

- DO NOT dolly tow any 4WD vehicle. Towing with only one set of wheels on the ground (front or rear) will cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Tow with all four wheels either ON the ground, or OFF the ground (using a vehicle trailer).
- Tow only in the forward direction. Towing this vehicle backwards can cause severe damage to the transfer case.
- Before recreational towing, the transfer case must be in NEUTRAL. To be certain the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL, perform the procedure outlined under “Shifting Into NEUTRAL”. Internal transmission damage will result, if the transfer case is not in NEUTRAL during towing.
- The transmission must be placed in PARK for recreational towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

*(Continued)***CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Do not disconnect the rear driveshaft because fluid will leak from the transfer case, causing damage to internal parts.
- Do not use a bumper-mounted clamp-on tow bar on your vehicle. The bumper face bar will be damaged.

**Shifting Into NEUTRAL (N)**

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for recreational towing.

**WARNING!**

You or others could be injured or killed if you leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the NEUTRAL (N) position without first fully engaging the parking brake. The transfer case NEUTRAL (N) position disengages both the front and rear driveshafts from the powertrain, and will allow the vehicle to roll, even if the automatic transmission is in PARK (or manual transmission is in gear). The parking brake should always be applied when the driver is not in the vehicle.



## CAUTION!

It is necessary to follow these steps to be certain that the transfer case is fully in NEUTRAL (N) before recreational towing to prevent damage to internal parts.

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop on level ground, with the engine running. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Shift the transfer case into NEUTRAL:
  - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever into NEUTRAL (N).
  - With electronic shift transfer case, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button. Some models have a small, recessed "N" button (at the center of the transfer case switches) that must be pressed using a ballpoint pen or similar object. Other models have a rectangular NEUTRAL switch, below the rotary transfer case control knob. The NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will blink while the shift is
5. Release the parking brake.
6. Shift the transmission into REVERSE.
7. Release the brake pedal for five seconds and ensure that there is no vehicle movement.
8. Repeat steps six and seven with automatic transmission in DRIVE.
9. Shift the transmission to NEUTRAL. Firmly apply the parking brake. Turn OFF the engine. For vehicles with Keyless Enter-N-Go, push and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button until the engine shuts off.
10. Shift the transmission into PARK.
11. Place the ignition in the OFF mode, and remove the key fob.
12. Attach the vehicle to the tow vehicle using a suitable tow bar.

in progress. The light will stop blinking (stay on solid) when the shift to NEUTRAL (N) is complete. After the shift is completed and the NEUTRAL (N) light stays on, release the NEUTRAL (N) button.

13. Release the parking brake.

### NOTE:

With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 2 through 3 are requirements that must be met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button, and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the NEUTRAL (N) button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the NEUTRAL (N) button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.



**Shifting Out Of NEUTRAL (N)**

Use the following procedure to prepare your vehicle for normal usage:

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop, leaving it connected to the tow vehicle.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Press and hold the brake pedal.
4. Start the engine, and shift the transmission into NEUTRAL.
  - With manual shift transfer case, shift the transfer case lever to the desired position.
  - With electronic shift transfer case with rotary selector switch, push and hold the transfer case NEUTRAL (N) button until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off. After the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off, release the NEUTRAL (N) button. After the NEUTRAL (N) button has been released, the transfer case will shift to the position indicated by the selector switch.
  - With electronic shift transfer case with push-button selector switch, push and

hold the switch for the desired transfer case position, until the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light turns off and the desired position indicator light turns on.

**NOTE:**

When shifting out of transfer case NEUTRAL (N), turning the engine OFF is not required, but may be helpful to avoid gear clash. With 8-speed automatic transmission, the engine must remain running, since turning the engine OFF will shift the transmission to PARK (and the transmission must be in NEUTRAL for the transfer case to shift out of NEUTRAL).

5. Turn the engine OFF. Shift automatic transmission into PARK. On 8-speed transmissions the shifter will automatically select PARK when the engine is turned off.
6. Release the brake pedal.
7. Disconnect vehicle from the tow vehicle.
8. Start the engine.
9. Press and hold the brake pedal.
10. Release the parking brake.

11. Shift the transmission into gear, release the brake pedal, and check that the vehicle operates normally.

**NOTE:**

With electronic shift transfer case:

- Steps 3 and 4 are requirements that must be met before pushing the button to shift out of NEUTRAL (N), and must continue to be met until the shift has been completed. If any of these requirements are not met before pushing the button or are no longer met during the shift, the NEUTRAL (N) indicator light will flash continuously until all requirements are met or until the button is released.
- The ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode for a shift to take place and for the position indicator lights to be operable. If the ignition is not in the ON/RUN mode, the shift will not take place and no position indicator lights will be on or flashing.
- A flashing NEUTRAL (N) position indicator light indicates that shift requirements have not been met.

# DRIVING TIPS

## Driving On Slippery Surfaces

### Acceleration

Rapid acceleration on snow covered, wet, or other slippery surfaces may cause the driving wheels to pull erratically to the right or left. This phenomenon occurs when there is a difference in the surface traction under the rear (driving) wheels.



### WARNING!

Rapid acceleration on slippery surfaces is dangerous. Unequal traction can cause sudden pulling of the rear wheels. You could lose control of the vehicle and possibly have a collision. Accelerate slowly and carefully whenever there is likely to be poor traction (ice, snow, wet, mud, loose sand, etc.).

## Driving Through Water

Driving through water more than a few inches/centimeters deep will require extra caution to ensure safety and prevent damage to your vehicle.

## Flowing/Rising Water



### WARNING!

Do not drive on or across a road or path where water is flowing and/or rising (as in storm run-off). Flowing water can wear away the road or path's surface and cause your vehicle to sink into deeper water. Furthermore, flowing and/or rising water can carry your vehicle away swiftly. Failure to follow this warning may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.

## Shallow Standing Water

Although your vehicle is capable of driving through shallow standing water, consider the following Cautions and Warnings before doing so.



### WARNING!

□ Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's traction capabilities. Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Driving through standing water limits your vehicle's braking capabilities, which increases stopping distances. Therefore, after driving through standing water, drive slowly and lightly press on the brake pedal several times to dry the brakes.
- Failure to follow these warnings may result in injuries that are serious or fatal to you, your passengers, and others around you.



### CAUTION!

- Always check the depth of the standing water before driving through it. Never drive through standing water that is deeper than the bottom of the tire rims mounted on the vehicle.
- Determine the condition of the road or the path that is under water and if there are any obstacles in the way before driving through the standing water.
- Do not exceed 5 mph (8 km/h) when driving through standing water. This will minimize wave effects.

*(Continued)*



**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- Driving through standing water may cause damage to your vehicle's drive-train components. Always inspect your vehicle's fluids (i.e., engine oil, transmission, axle, etc.) for signs of contamination (i.e., fluid that is milky or foamy in appearance) after driving through standing water. Do not continue to operate the vehicle if any fluid appears contaminated, as this may result in further damage. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
  
- Getting water inside your vehicle's engine can cause it to lock up and stall out, and cause serious internal damage to the engine. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## HAZARD WARNING FLASHERS



The Hazard Warning switch is located on the upper switch bank just below the radio.

### NOTE:

If your vehicle is equipped with a 12-inch Uconnect display, the Hazard Warning switch is located above the display.

## BULB REPLACEMENT

### Replacement Bulbs

All of the inside bulbs are brass or glass-wedge base. Aluminum base bulbs are not approved.

### Interior Bulbs

	Bulb Number
Overhead Console Lamps	TS 212-9
Dome Lamp	7679
For lighted switches, see your authorized dealer for replacement instructions.	

Push the switch to turn on the Hazard Warning flasher. When the switch is activated, all directional turn signals will flash on and off to warn oncoming traffic of an emergency. Push the switch a second time to turn off the Hazard Warning flashers.

This is an emergency warning system and it should not be used when the vehicle is in motion. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and it is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

When you must leave the vehicle to seek assistance, the Hazard Warning flashers will continue to operate even though the ignition is placed in the OFF position.

### NOTE:

With extended use the Hazard Warning flashers may wear down your battery.



## Exterior Bulbs

	<b>Bulb Number</b>
Low Beam (Halogen Reflector Headlamp)	H11LL
High Beam (Halogen Reflector Headlamp)	9005LL
Low & High Beam (LED Reflector Headlamp)	LED (Serviced At An Authorized Dealer)
Low & High Beam (LED Projector Headlamp)	LED (Serviced At An Authorized Dealer)
Turn Signal / Front Position (Halogen Reflector Headlamp)	7444NA
Turn Signal / Front Position (LED Headlamps)	LED (Serviced at authorized dealer)
Front Side Marker (Halogen Reflector Headlamp)	W5W
Front Side Marker (LED Headlamps)	LED (Serviced At An Authorized Dealer)
Front Fog Lamps (Halogen Reflector Headlamp)	H11LL
Front Fog Lamps (LED Headlamps)	LED (Serviced At An Authorized Dealer)
Side Indicators (Front And Side View Mirror)	LED (Serviced at authorized dealer)
Center High Mounted Stop Lamp (CHMSL)	921
Cab Roof Marker Lamps	194NA
Box Off Tail Lamps – Stop/Turn/Tail/License Plate	1157
Box Off Tail Lamps – Back Up	1156

## FUSES



### WARNING!

- When replacing a blown fuse, always use an appropriate replacement fuse with the same amp rating as the original fuse. Never replace a fuse with another fuse of higher amp rating. Never replace a blown fuse with metal wires or any other material. Do not place a fuse inside a circuit breaker cavity or vice versa. Failure to use proper fuses may result in serious personal injury, fire and/or property damage.

*(Continued)*



### WARNING! (Continued)

- Before replacing a fuse, make sure that the ignition is off and that all the other services are switched off and/or disengaged.
- If the replaced fuse blows again, contact an authorized dealer.
- If a general protection fuse for safety systems (air bag system, braking system), power unit systems (engine system, transmission system) or steering system blows, contact an authorized dealer.

## Power Distribution Center

The Power Distribution Center is located in the engine compartment near the battery. This center contains cartridge fuses, micro fuses, relays, and circuit breakers. A description of each fuse and component may be stamped on the inside cover, otherwise the cavity number of each fuse is stamped on the inside cover that corresponds to the following chart.

Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F01	80 Amp Black	–	Rad Fan Control Module – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F02	60 Amp Yellow	–	ABS Pump Motor (HD Only)
F03	60 Amp Yellow	–	Rad Fan – If Equipped
F04	50 Amp Red	–	400W Inverter – If Equipped (HD Only)
F05	40 Amp Green 50 Amp Red (Special Services Vehicle (SSV))	–	Compressor For Air Suspension – If Equipped



<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Micro Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F06	40 Amp Green	–	ABS Pump Motor (DS 1500 Only)
F07	40 Amp Green	–	Starter Solenoid
F08	20 Amp Blue (DS 1500 LD/Cummins Diesel) 40 Amp Green	– –	NOX Sensor – If Equipped Aux Relay Output- SSV Only
F09	40 Amp Green (SSV & Cummins Diesel)	–	Aux Relay Output / Diesel Fuel Heater – If Equipped
F09	30 Amp Pink	–	Brake Vacuum Pump – If Equipped (HD Only)
F10	40 Amp Green	–	Body Controller / Exterior Lighting #2
F11	30 Amp Pink	–	PWR - Trailer Tow Electric Brake Batt Feed – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F11	40 Amp Green	–	Brake System Module (ECU and Valves) (HD Only)
F12	40 Amp Green	–	Body Controller #3
F13	40 Amp Green	–	Blower Motor
F14	40 Amp Green	–	Body Controller #4 / Exterior Lighting
F15	30 Amp Pink 40 Amp Green	– –	Power Side Steps – If Equipped (HD Only) Extra Fuse - SSV Only
F16	30 Amp Pink	–	Smart-Bar Module – If Equipped (HD Only)
F17	30 Amp Pink	–	Winch Control Module – If Equipped (HD Only)
F19	20 Amp Blue (DS 1500 LD Diesel) 30 Amp Pink (Cummins Diesel)	–	SCR – If Equipped
F20	30 Amp Pink	–	Passenger Door Module
F21	30 Amp Pink	–	Drive Train Control Module

<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Micro Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F22	20 Amp Blue	–	Engine Control Module GPEC / Heavy Duty / Other – If Equipped
F22	25 Amp White (Cummins Diesel)	–	PCM – If Equipped
F23	30 Amp Pink	–	CBC Feed # 1
F24	30 Amp Pink	–	Driver Door Module
F25	30 Amp Pink	–	Front Wiper
F26	30 Amp Pink	–	Antilock Brakes / Stability Control Module / Valves – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F28	20 Amp Blue	–	Trailer Tow Backup Lights – If Equipped
F29	20 Amp Blue	–	Trailer Tow Parking Lights – If Equipped
F30	30 Amp Pink	–	Trailer Tow Receptacle / Trailer Tow (Separate E-Brake)/Trailer Tow (BUX)
F31	30 Amp Pink	–	Diesel Heater Control – If Equipped (DS 1500 LD Diesel)
F31	20 Amp Blue	–	Aux App SSV Only - If Equipped
F32	–	–	Aux Feed, Special Services Vehicle-If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F33	20 Amp Blue	–	Trans Control Module – If Equipped (HD Only) Aux Feed, SSV Only (DS 1500 Only)
F34	30 Amp Pink	–	Vehicle System Interface Module #2 – If Equipped (HD Only) SSV (DS 1500 Only)
F35	30 Amp Pink	–	Sunroof – If Equipped
F36	30 Amp Pink	–	Electric Back Light – If Equipped
F37	30 Amp Pink	–	Fuel Heater #2, Aux Relay 2 – If Equipped (HD Only) SSV (DS 1500 Only)
F38	30 Amp Pink	–	Integrated Trailer Brake Module – If Equipped (HD Only) Power Inverter 115V AC – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)



<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Micro Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F39	20 Amp Blue	–	Power Outlet – SSV Only
F40	–	10 Amp Red	Ventilated Seats – If Equipped (HD Only)
F41	–	10 Amp Red	Active Grille Shutter / Active Air Dam – If Equipped
F42	–	20 Amp Yellow	Horn
F43	–	15 Amp Blue	Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped (HD Only)
F44	–	10 Amp Red	Diagnostic Port
F46	–	10 Amp Red	Upfitters Relay Coil – If Equipped (HD Only) Spare (DS 1500 Only)
F49	–	10 Amp Red	Instrument Panel Cluster / HVAC (DS 1500 Only) Instrument Cluster / MOD CSG (HD Only)
F50	–	20 Amp Yellow	Air Suspension Control Module – If Equipped
F51	–	10 Amp Red	Ignition Node Module / Keyless Ignition Node Module, Radio Frequency Hub Module / Electric Steering Column Lock - If Equipped
F52	–	5 Amp Tan	Battery Sensor
F53	–	20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Tow – Left Turn/Stop Lights - If Equipped
F54	–	20 Amp Yellow	Non Memory Adjustable Pedals - If Equipped
F56	–	15 Amp Blue	Additional Diesel Content - If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F57	–	20 Amp Yellow	TCM/PCM / Solenoid Trans Pressure SW (RFE Trans Only) – If Equipped (HD Only) Transmission (DS 1500 Only)
F58	–	10 Amp Red	Bed Lighting (LED) – If Equipped (HD Only)
F60	–	15 Amp Blue	Underhood Lamp / TCM – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F61	–	10 Amp Red	UREA Sensor / PM Sensor – If Equipped (DS 1500 LD Diesel & Cummins Diesel)

<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Micro Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F62	–	10 Amp Red	Air Conditioning Clutch
F63	–	20 Amp Yellow	Ignition Coils (Gas), Ignition Coils Capacitors (Gas) / Short Runner Valve Actuator / Urea Heater Control Unit (DS 1500 LD Diesel) / RLY Coil Feed-SCR (DS 1500 LD Diesel)
F64	–	25 Amp Clear	Fuel Injectors / Powertrain Control Module / SRV – If Equipped
F65	–	10 Amp Red	MOD Inverter (Wake Up) / Power Port / USB IP / WCPM – If Equipped (HD Only) Spare (DS 1500 Only)
F66	–	10 Amp Red	Sunroof / Light and Rain Sensor Module / Inside Rearview Mirror / Passenger Window SW / USB Port Rear / Feed for R/A RLY #2 Coil – If Equipped
F67	–	10 Amp Red	CD / DVD / UCI Port – If Equipped (HD Only) Bluetooth Hands-Free Module / CD – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F68	–	10 Amp Red	AEB RACAM HTR – If Equipped (HD Only)
F69	–	15 Amp Blue	SCR Module – If Equipped (HD Only)
F70	–	30 Amp Green	Fuel Pump Motor / K09 RLY Coil Feed (Cummins Diesel) – If Equipped
F71	–	25 Amp Clear	Amplifier / Active Noise Cancelation – If Equipped (HD Only)
F72	–	10 Amp Red	PCM / DC/DC Converter Voltage– If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F73	–	20 Amp Yellow	Fuel Transfer Pump (Rear Tank) – If Equipped (HD Only)
F74	–	20 Amp Yellow	Brake Vacuum Pump Gas/Diesel – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F74	–	10 Amp Red	Backup Alarm – If Equipped (HD Only)
F75	–	10 Amp Red	ATMM / Coil-SCR Module RLY– If Equipped (HD Only) Coolant Temperature Valve – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)



<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Micro Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F76	–	10 Amp Red	Electronic Stability Control (HD Only) Brake System Module / Stop Lamp Switch / Electric Park Brake / Clutch Pedal Switch (DS 1500 Only)
F77	–	10 Amp Red	Drivetrain Control Module / Front Axle Disconnect Module / TCM (HD Only) Drivetrain Control Module / ELSD / Front Axle Disconnect Module / Transmission Control Relay / RDM / Power Take Off Unit – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F78	–	10 Amp Red	Engine Control Module / Powertrain Control Module / Electric Power Steering (DS 1500 Only)
F78	–	15 Amp Blue	Engine Control Module / Powertrain Control Module / AEB RACM MOD / Feed To AUX PDC Relay Coils (HD Only)
F79	–	15 Amp Blue	ID / Clearance Lights
F80	–	10 Amp Red	Universal Garage Door Opener / Compass / Anti-Intrusion Module (DS 1500 Only) ASSY Overhead Console / SW Assist / SW 911 – If Equipped (HD Only)
F81	–	20 Amp Yellow	Trailer Tow Right Turn / Stop Lights - If Equipped
F82	–	10 Amp Red	Steering Column Control Module / Cruise Control
F83	–	–	No Connection
F84	–	15 Amp Blue	ASBM / HVAC / ICS / Rear Heated Seat Switches
F85	–	10 Amp Red	Airbag Module
F86	–	10 Amp Red	Airbag Module

<b>Cavity</b>	<b>Cartridge Fuse</b>	<b>Micro Fuse</b>	<b>Description</b>
F87	–	10 Amp Red	Air Suspension / ITBM / Steering Column Control Module / MOD Gateway CAN-C Trailer TPM (HD Only) Air Suspension / Trailer Tow / DC/DC Converter (Voltage Stabilizer) / Steering Column Control Module / Occupant Classification Sensor (DS 1500 Only)
F88	–	15 Amp Blue	Instrument Panel Cluster
F90/F91	–	20 Amp Yellow	IGN or BATT Customer Selectable – If Equipped (HD Only) Power Outlet (Rear Seats) Customer Selectable (DS 1500 Only)
F93	–	20 Amp Yellow	Cigar Lighter - If Equipped
F94	–	10 Amp Red	Shift-By-Wire / Transfer Case Switch (DS 1500 Only) Shift-By-Wire / Transfer Case Switch / Module TPM Trailer (HD Only) / Module Gateway Can-C Trailer TPM (HD Only)
F95	–	10 Amp Red	Rearview Camera / Park Assist / CHMSL Camera / Blind Spot Sensor / Surround View Camera (HD Only) Rear Camera / Park Assist / Blind Spot Sensor / Compass (DS 1500 Only)
F96	–	10 Amp Red	Rear Seat Heater Switch / Trunk Lamp With Flashlamp Charger / Truck Lamp - If Equipped (DS 1500 Only) Trailer Camera – If Equipped (HD Only)
F97	–	25 Amp Clear	Rear Heated Seats And Heated Steering Wheel – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F97	–	20 Amp Yellow	Front Heated Seat Passenger – If Equipped (HD Only)
F98	–	25 Amp Clear	Front Heated Seats – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only)
F98	–	20 Amp Yellow	Front Heated Seat Driver – If Equipped (HD Only)



Cavity	Cartridge Fuse	Micro Fuse	Description
F99	–	10 Amp Red	HVAC / DASM (DS 1500 Only) HVAC / In-Car Temperature Sensor / CSG MOD / Humidity Sensor (HD Only)
F100	–	10 Amp Red	Upfitters – If Equipped (HD Only)
F101	–	15 Amp Blue	SSV Only
F101	–	20 Amp Yellow	Rear Heated Seat Right (HD Only)
F102	–	20 Amp Yellow	Rear Heated Seat Left / Run RLY #3 Coil (HD Only)
F103	–	10 Amp Red	HeadLamp AFLS (HD Only)
F104	–	20 Amp Yellow	Power Outlets (Instrument Panel / Center Console) / Trunk – If Equipped (DS 1500 Only) UCI Port / USB Rear (HD Only)

**CAUTION!**

- When installing the power distribution center cover, it is important to ensure the cover is properly positioned and fully latched. Failure to do so may allow water to get into the power distribution center and possibly result in an electrical system failure.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- When replacing a blown fuse, it is important to use only a fuse having the correct amperage rating. The use of a fuse with a rating other than indicated may result in a dangerous electrical system overload. If a properly rated fuse continues to blow, it indicates a problem in the circuit that must be corrected.

# JACKING AND TIRE CHANGING



## WARNING!

- ❑ Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid the danger of being hit when operating the jack or changing the wheel.
- ❑ Being under a jacked-up vehicle is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and fall on you. You could be crushed. Never put any part of your body under a vehicle that is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- ❑ Never start or run the engine while the vehicle is on a jack.
- ❑ The jack is designed to be used as a tool for changing tires only. The jack should not be used to lift the vehicle for service purposes. The vehicle should be jacked on a firm level surface only. Avoid ice or slippery areas.

## 4500/5500 Models

**These vehicles do not come equipped with a jack.**

### NOTE:

Jacking and tire changing on 4500/5500 models should be performed by an authorized dealer, or knowledgeable service personnel with the appropriate heavy duty equipment, like a tire service company.

### Preparations For Jacking

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level surface. Avoid ice or slippery areas.



## WARNING!

Do not attempt to change a tire on the side of the vehicle close to moving traffic. Pull far enough off the road to avoid being hit when operating the jack or changing the tire.

2. Place the gear selector into PARK. On four-wheel drive vehicles, shift the transfer case to the 4L position.
3. Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
4. Apply the parking brake.

5. Turn the ignition OFF.
6. Block both the front and rear of the wheel diagonally opposite the jacking position. For example, if the right front wheel is being changed, block the left rear wheel.



**Wheel Blocked**

### NOTE:

Passengers should not remain in the vehicle when the vehicle is being jacked.



## Jacking Instructions 4500 And 5500 Series

**WARNING!**

Carefully follow these tire changing warnings to help prevent personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Always park on a firm, level surface as far from the edge of the roadway as possible before raising the vehicle.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning flasher.
- Block the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel to be raised.
- Apply the parking brake firmly and set the transmission in PARK.
- Never start or run the engine with the vehicle on a jack.
- Do not let anyone sit in the vehicle when it is on a jack.
- Do not get under the vehicle when it is on a jack. If you need to get under a raised vehicle, take it to a service center where it can be raised on a lift.
- Only use the jack in the positions indicated and for lifting this vehicle during a tire change.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- If working on or near a roadway, be extremely careful of motor traffic.
- To assure that spare tires, flat or inflated, are securely stowed, spares must be stowed with the valve stem facing the ground.



**Warning Label**

**CAUTION!**

Do not attempt to raise the vehicle by jacking on locations other than those indicated in the Jacking Instructions for this vehicle.

1. If equipped, remove the spare wheel, jack, and tools from storage.
2. Using the lug wrench, loosen, but do not remove, the lug nuts by turning them counterclockwise one turn while the wheel is still on the ground.
3. When changing the front wheel, assemble the jack driver to the jack and connect the jack driver to the extension tube. Place the jack under the axle as close to the tire as possible with the jack driver extending to the front. Connect the extension tubes and lug wrench.



### Front Jacking Locations

When changing a rear wheel, assemble the jack driver to the jack and connect the jack driver to the extension tubes. Securely place the jack under the sway bar bracket (unless both tires are flat on one side, then place jack under shock bracket) facing forward in vehicle. Connect the extension tubes and lug wrench.



### Rear Jacking Locations

**Before raising the wheel off the ground, make sure that the jack will not damage surrounding truck parts and adjust the jack position as required.**

#### NOTE:

If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack driver in order to lower the jack.

- By rotating the lug wrench clockwise, raise the vehicle until the wheel just clears the surface.



### WARNING!

Raising the vehicle higher than necessary can make the vehicle less stable. It could slip off the jack and hurt someone near it. Raise the vehicle only enough to remove the tire.

- Remove the lug nuts and pull the wheel off. Install the spare wheel and lug nuts with the cone shaped end of the nuts toward the wheel on single rear wheel (SRW) models. On dual rear wheel models (DRW) the lug nuts are a two-piece assembly with a flat face. Lightly tighten the nuts. To avoid risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not fully tighten the nuts until the vehicle has been lowered.
- Using the lug wrench, finish tightening the nuts using a crisscross pattern. For the proper lug nut torque specifications refer to "Wheel And Tire Torque Specifications" in "Technical Specifications." If in doubt about the correct tightness, have them checked with a torque wrench by an authorized dealer or at a service station.



**WARNING!**

A loose tire or jack thrown forward in a collision or hard stop, could endanger the occupants of the vehicle. Always stow the jack parts and the spare tire in the places provided.

7. Install wheel center cap (if equipped) and remove wheel blocks. Do not install chrome or aluminum wheel center caps on the spare wheel. This may result in cap damage.
8. Lower the jack to its fully closed position. If the jack will not lower by turning the dial (thumbwheel) by hand, it may be necessary to use the jack driver in order to lower the jack. Stow the replaced tire, jack, and tools as previously described.
9. Adjust the tire pressure when possible.

**Dual Rear Wheels**

Slots in the wheels will assist in properly orienting the inner and outer wheels. Align these slots when assembling the wheels for best access to the tire valve on the inner wheel. The tires of both dual wheels must be

completely off the ground when tightening to insure wheel centering and maximum wheel clamping.

Dual wheel models require a special heavy-duty lug nut tightening adapter (included with the vehicle) to correctly tighten the lug nuts. Also, when it is necessary to remove and install dual rear wheels, use a proper vehicle lifting device.

**NOTE:**

When installing a spare tire (if equipped) as part of a dual rear wheel end combination, the tire diameter of the two individual tires must be compared. If there is a significant difference, the larger tire should be installed in a front location. The correct direction of rotation for dual tire installations must also be observed.

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

Refer to “Wheel And Tire Torque Specifications” in “Technical Specifications” for further information.

**Wheel Nuts**

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All wheel nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The wheel nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the wheel nuts to final torque in increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the wheel nut opposite to the wheel nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved.

Refer to “Wheel And Tire Torque Specifications” in “Technical Specifications” for further information.

**To Stow The Flat Or Spare – If Equipped**

Refer to Upfitters Body Builder’s Guide for information on stowing your spare tire (if equipped).

**Hub Caps/Wheel Covers – If Equipped**

The hub caps must be removed before raising the vehicle off the ground.



### CAUTION!

Use extreme caution when removing the front and rear wheel covers. Damage can occur to the center cap and/or the wheel if screwdriver type tools are used. A pulling motion, not a pry off motion, is recommended to remove the caps.

For 3500 single rear wheel (SRW) models, use the flat end of the lug wrench to hook and pull off the hub cap. Find the opening in the hub cap, insert the lug wrench, and pull off the cap. If you need to pry against the wheel, protect the wheel surface.

On 3500 models with dual rear wheels (DRW), you must first remove the hub caps—use the procedure noted for the single rear wheel. For the wheel covers (wheel skins), insert the flat end of the lug wrench between the outer edge of the wheel cover and the wheel. Pry against the wheel to remove the wheel cover. Repeat this procedure around the wheel until the cover pops off.



### CAUTION!

- Use a pulling motion to remove the hub cap. Do not use a twisting motion when removing the hub cap, damage to the hub cap; finish may occur.
- The rear hub caps on the dual rear wheel has two pull off notches. Make sure that the hook of the jack handle driver is located squarely in the cap notch before attempting to pull off.

Replace the wheel covers using a rubber mallet to ease the installation. Align the wheel cover vent holes to the wheel vent holes. Tap on the wheel cover as needed to firmly seat it evenly around the wheel.

## JUMP STARTING

If your vehicle has a discharged battery, it can be jump started using a set of jumper cables and a battery in another vehicle, or by using a portable battery booster pack. Jump starting can be dangerous if done improperly, so please follow the procedures in this section carefully.



### WARNING!

Do not attempt jump starting if the battery is frozen. It could rupture or explode and cause personal injury.



### CAUTION!

Do not use a portable battery booster pack or any other booster source with a system voltage greater than 12 Volts or damage to the battery, starter motor, alternator or electrical system may occur.

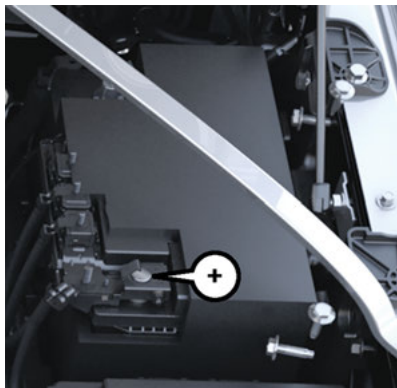
#### NOTE:

When using a portable battery booster pack, follow the manufacturer's operating instructions and precautions.

#### Preparations For Jump Start

The battery in your vehicle is located in the front of the engine compartment, behind the left headlight assembly.







**Positive Battery Post**

**NOTE:**


The positive battery post may be covered with a protective cap if equipped. Lift up on the cap to gain access to the positive battery post. Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post which has a positive (+) symbol on or around the post.


 <b>WARNING!</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>□ Take care to avoid the radiator cooling fan whenever the hood is raised. It can start anytime the ignition switch is ON. You can be injured by moving fan blades.</li> <li>□ Remove any metal jewelry such as rings, watch bands and bracelets that could make an inadvertent electrical contact. You could be seriously injured.</li> <li>□ Batteries contain sulfuric acid that can burn your skin or eyes and generate hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Keep open flames or sparks away from the battery.</li> </ul>	

1. Apply the parking brake, shift the automatic transmission into PARK and turn the ignition OFF.
2. Turn off the heater, radio, and all unnecessary electrical accessories.
3. If using another vehicle to jump start the battery, park the vehicle within the jumper cables' reach, apply the parking brake and make sure the ignition is OFF.

 <b>WARNING!</b>	
Do not allow vehicles to touch each other as this could establish a ground connection and personal injury could result.	

**Jump Starting Procedure**

 <b>WARNING!</b>	
Failure to follow this jump starting procedure could result in personal injury or property damage due to battery explosion.	

 <b>CAUTION!</b>	
Failure to follow these procedures could result in damage to the charging system of the booster vehicle or the discharged vehicle.	

**Connecting The Jumper Cables**

1. Connect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the discharged vehicle.

**NOTE:**

**Do not jump off fuses. Only jump directly off positive post.**

2. Connect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
4. Connect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable to a good engine ground (exposed metal part of the discharged vehicle's engine) away from the battery and the fuel injection system.



### WARNING!

Do not connect the jumper cable to the negative (-) post of the discharged battery. The resulting electrical spark could cause the battery to explode and could result in personal injury. Only use the specific ground point, do not use any other exposed metal parts.

5. Start the engine in the vehicle that has the booster battery, let the engine idle a few minutes, and then start the engine in the vehicle with the discharged battery.



### CAUTION!

Do not connect jumper cable to any of the fuses on the positive battery terminal. The resulting electrical current will blow the fuse.

6. Once the engine is started, remove the jumper cables in the reverse sequence:

#### Disconnecting The Jumper Cables

1. Disconnect the negative (-) end of the jumper cable from the engine ground of the vehicle with the discharged battery.
2. Disconnect the opposite end of the negative (-) jumper cable from the negative (-) post of the booster battery.
3. Disconnect the positive (+) end of the jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the booster battery.
4. Disconnect the opposite end of the positive (+) jumper cable from the positive (+) post of the vehicle with the discharged battery.

If frequent jump starting is required to start your vehicle you should have the battery and

charging system inspected at an authorized dealer.



### CAUTION!

Accessories plugged into the vehicle power outlets draw power from the vehicle's battery, even when not in use (i.e., cellular devices, etc.). Eventually, if plugged in long enough without engine operation, the vehicle's battery will discharge sufficiently to degrade battery life and/or prevent the engine from starting.

## IF YOUR ENGINE OVERHEATS

In any of the following situations, you can reduce the potential for overheating by taking the appropriate action.

- On the highways — slow down.
- In city traffic — while stopped, place the transmission in NEUTRAL, but do not increase the engine idle speed while preventing vehicle motion with the brakes.



**NOTE:**

There are steps that you can take to slow down an impending overheat condition:

- If your air conditioner (A/C) is on, turn it off. The A/C system adds heat to the engine cooling system and turning the A/C off can help remove this heat.
- You can also turn the temperature control to maximum heat, the mode control to floor and the blower control to high. This allows the heater core to act as a supplement to the radiator and aids in removing heat from the engine cooling system.

**WARNING!**

You or others can be badly burned by hot engine coolant (antifreeze) or steam from your radiator. If you see or hear steam coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the radiator has had time to cool. Never try to open a cooling system pressure cap when the radiator or coolant bottle is hot.

**CAUTION!**

Driving with a hot cooling system could damage your vehicle. If the temperature gauge reads HOT (H), pull over and stop the vehicle. Idle the vehicle with the air conditioner turned off until the pointer drops back into the normal range. If the pointer remains on HOT (H), and you hear continuous chimes, turn the engine off immediately and call for service.

## GEAR SELECTOR OVERRIDE — 6-SPEED TRANSMISSION

If a malfunction occurs and the gear selector cannot be moved out of the PARK position, you can use the following procedure to temporarily move the gear selector:



**Gear Selector Override Access Port**

1. Turn the engine OFF.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake.
3. Tilt the steering wheel to the full up position.
4. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.
5. Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the access port (ringed circle) on the bottom of the steering column, and push and hold the override release lever up.

6. Move the gear selector to the NEUTRAL position.
7. The vehicle may then be started in NEUTRAL.

## MANUAL PARK RELEASE — 8-SPEED TRANSMISSION

### **WARNING!**

Always secure your vehicle by fully applying the parking brake before activating the Manual Park Release. In addition, you should be seated in the driver's seat with your foot firmly on the brake pedal when activating the Manual Park Release. Activating the Manual Park Release will allow your vehicle to roll away if it is not secured by the parking brake, or by proper connection to a tow vehicle. Activating the Manual Park Release on an unsecured vehicle could lead to serious injury or death for those in or around the vehicle.

In order to push or tow the vehicle in cases where the transmission will not shift out of PARK (such as a dead battery), a Manual Park Release is available.



**Manual Park Release Pull Strap**

Follow these steps to activate the Manual Park Release:

1. Firmly apply the parking brake.
2. Using a small screwdriver or similar tool, remove the Manual Park Release access cover, which is just above the parking brake release handle, below and to the left of the steering column.
3. Press and maintain firm pressure on the brake pedal.

4. Using the screwdriver or similar tool, push the Manual Park Release lever locking tab (just below the middle of the lever) to the right.
5. While holding the locking tab in the disengaged position, pull the tether strap to rotate the lever rearward, until it locks in place pointing towards the driver's seat. Release the locking tab and verify that the Manual Park Release lever is locked in the released position.
6. The vehicle is now out of PARK and can be towed. Release the parking brake only when the vehicle is securely connected to a tow vehicle.

### **To Reset The Manual Park Release:**

1. Push the locking tab to the right, to unlock the lever.
2. Rotate the Manual Park Release lever forward to its original position, until the locking tab snaps into place to secure the lever.
3. Pull gently on the tether strap to confirm that the lever is locked in its stowed position.
4. Re-install the access cover.



## FREEDING A STUCK VEHICLE

If your vehicle becomes stuck in mud, sand, or snow, it can often be moved using a rocking motion. Turn the steering wheel right and left to clear the area around the front wheels. Then shift back and forth between DRIVE and REVERSE, while gently pressing the accelerator. Use the least amount of accelerator pedal pressure that will maintain the rocking motion, without spinning the wheels or racing the engine.

### NOTE:

- For trucks equipped with an 8-speed transmission, shifts between DRIVE and REVERSE can only be achieved at wheel speeds of 5 mph (8 km/h) or less. Whenever the transmission remains in NEUTRAL for more than two seconds, you must press the brake pedal to engage DRIVE or REVERSE.
- Push the "ESC Off" switch, to place the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system in "Partial Off" mode, before rocking the vehicle. Once the vehicle has been freed, push the "ESC Off" switch again to restore "ESC On" mode. Refer to "Electronic

Brake Control" in "Safety" in the Owner's Manual for further information.



### WARNING!

Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause damage, or even failure, of the axle and tires. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping when you are stuck and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.



### CAUTION!

- Racing the engine or spinning the wheels may lead to transmission overheating and failure. Allow the engine to idle with the transmission in NEUTRAL for at least one minute after every five rocking-motion cycles. This will minimize overheating and reduce the risk of transmission failure during prolonged efforts to free a stuck vehicle.

*(Continued)*



### CAUTION! (Continued)

- When "rocking" a stuck vehicle by shifting between DRIVE and REVERSE, do not spin the wheels faster than 15 mph (24 km/h), or drivetrain damage may result.
- Revving the engine or spinning the wheels too fast may lead to transmission overheating and failure. It can also damage the tires. Do not spin the wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) while in gear (no transmission shifting occurring).

## TOWING A DISABLED VEHICLE

This section describes procedures for towing a disabled vehicle using a commercial towing service. If the transmission and drivetrain are operable, disabled vehicles may also be towed as described under “Recreational Towing” in the “Starting And Operating” section.

Towing Condition	Wheels OFF The Ground	2WD Models	4WD Models
Flat Tow	NONE	<b>If transmission is operable:</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Transmission in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• 30 mph (48 km/h) <b>max speed</b></li> <li>• 15 miles (24 km) <b>max</b> distance (6–speed transmission)</li> <li>• 30 miles (48 km) <b>max</b> distance (8–speed transmission)</li> </ul>	<b>See instructions in “Recreational Towing” under “Starting And Operating”</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Auto Transmission in <b>PARK</b></li> <li>• Transfer Case in <b>NEUTRAL</b></li> <li>• Tow in <b>forward</b> direction</li> </ul>
Wheel Lift Or Dolly Tow	Front		<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
	Rear	OK	<b>NOT ALLOWED</b>
Flatbed	<b>ALL</b>	<b>BEST METHOD</b>	<b>BEST METHOD</b>

Proper towing or lifting equipment is required to prevent damage to your vehicle. Use only tow bars and other equipment designed for this purpose, following equipment manufacturer’s instructions. Use of safety chains is mandatory. Attach a tow bar or other towing device to main structural members of the vehicle, not to bumpers or associated brackets. State and local laws regarding vehicles under tow must be observed.

If you must use the accessories (wipers, defrosters, etc.) while being towed, the ignition must be in the ON/RUN mode, not the ACC mode.

If the key fob is unavailable or the vehicle's battery is discharged, refer to “Manual Park Release” or “Gear Selector Override” in this section for instructions on shifting the automatic transmission out of PARK for towing.



### CAUTION!

- Do not use sling type equipment when towing. Vehicle damage may occur.
- When securing the vehicle to a flat bed truck, do not attach to front or rear suspension components. Damage to your vehicle may result from improper towing.



## Two-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing your vehicle with all four wheels **OFF** the ground using a flatbed.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transmission is operable, the vehicle may be towed (with the rear wheels on the ground) under the following conditions:

- The transmission must be in NEUTRAL. Refer to “Manual Park Release” in this section for instructions on shifting the 8-speed transmission to NEUTRAL when the engine is off.
- The towing speed must not exceed 30 mph (48 km/h).
- The towing distance must not exceed 15 miles (24 km) for 6-speed transmission, or 30 miles (48 km) for 8-speed transmission.

If the transmission is not operable, or the vehicle must be towed faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) or farther than 15 miles (24 km) for 6-speed transmission, or 30 miles (48 km) for 8-speed transmission, tow with the rear wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed, or with the front wheels raised and the rear

wheels on a towing dolly, or (when using a suitable steering wheel stabilizer to hold the front wheels in the straight position) with rear wheels raised and the front wheels on the ground.



### CAUTION!

Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe engine and/or transmission damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Four-Wheel Drive Models

The manufacturer recommends towing with all wheels **OFF** the ground. Acceptable methods are to tow the vehicle on a flatbed or with one end of vehicle raised and the opposite end on a towing dolly.

If flatbed equipment is not available, and the transfer case is operable, the vehicle may be towed (in the forward direction, with **ALL** wheels on the ground), **IF** the transfer case is in NEUTRAL and the transmission is in PARK. Refer to “Recreational Towing” in “Starting And Operating” for further information and detailed instructions.



### CAUTION!

- Front or rear wheel lifts must not be used (if the remaining wheels are on the ground). Internal damage to the transmission or transfer case will occur if a front or rear wheel lift is used when towing.
- Towing this vehicle in violation of the above requirements can cause severe transmission and/or transfer case damage. Damage from improper towing is not covered under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

## Emergency Tow Hooks – If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with emergency tow hooks.

**NOTE:**For off-road recovery, it is recommended to use both of the front tow hooks to minimize the risk of damage to the vehicle.



### WARNING!

- Do not use a chain for freeing a stuck vehicle. Chains may break, causing serious injury or death.

*(Continued)*



### **WARNING! (Continued)**

- Stand clear of vehicles when pulling with tow hooks. Tow straps may become disengaged, causing serious injury.



### **CAUTION!**

Tow hooks are for emergency use only, to rescue a vehicle stranded off road. Do not use tow hooks for tow truck hookup or highway towing. You could damage your vehicle.

## **ENHANCED ACCIDENT RESPONSE SYSTEM (EARS)**

This vehicle is equipped with an Enhanced Accident Response System.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Enhanced Accident Response System (EARS) function.

## **EVENT DATA RECORDER (EDR)**

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed under certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle.

Please refer to “Occupant Restraint Systems” in “Safety” for further information on the Event Data Recorder (EDR).



## SCHEDULED SERVICING — GASOLINE ENGINE

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic oil change indicator system. The oil change indicator system will remind you that it is time to take your vehicle in for scheduled maintenance.

Based on engine operation conditions, the oil change indicator message will illuminate. This means that service is required for your vehicle. Operating conditions such as frequent short-trips, trailer tow, extremely hot or cold ambient temperatures, and E85 fuel usage will influence when the “Oil Change Required” message is displayed. Severe Operating Conditions can cause the change oil message to illuminate as early as 3,500 miles (5,600 km) since last reset. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible, within the next 500 miles (805 km).

Your authorized dealer will reset the oil change indicator message after completing the scheduled oil change. If a scheduled oil change is performed by someone other than your authorized dealer, the message can be reset by referring to the steps described under “Warning And Indicator Lights” or “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” in your Owner’s Manual for further information.

### Gasoline Engines:

Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 8,000 miles (13,000 km), twelve months or 350 hours of engine run time, whichever comes first. The 350 hours of engine run or idle time is generally only a concern for fleet customers.

### Severe Duty:

Change Engine Oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) or 350 hours of engine run time if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or very low engine RPM’s. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

### Once A Month Or Before A Long Trip:

- Check engine oil level.
- Check windshield washer fluid level.
- Check the tire inflation pressures and look for unusual wear or damage. Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear.
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, power steering and automatic transmission (six-speed only), and fill as needed.
- Check function of all interior and exterior lights.

## Maintenance Plan – Gasoline Engine

### Required Maintenance

Refer to the maintenance plan on the following pages for required maintenance.

<b>At Every Oil Change Interval As Indicated By Oil Change Indicator System:</b>
<input type="checkbox"/> Change oil and filter.
<input type="checkbox"/> Rotate the tires. <b>Rotate at the first sign of irregular wear, even if it occurs before the oil indicator system turns on.</b>
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect engine cooling system protection and hoses.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect exhaust system.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect engine air cleaner if using in dusty or off-road conditions.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect battery and clean and tighten terminals as required.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect automatic transmission fluid if equipped with dipstick.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect brake pads, shoes, rotors, drums, hoses and park brake.
<input type="checkbox"/> Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.



Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)	20,000	30,000	40,000	50,000	60,000	70,000	80,000	90,000	100,000	110,000	120,000	130,000	140,000	150,000
Or Years:	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Or Kilometers:	32,000	48,000	64,000	80,000	96,000	112,000	128,000	144,000	160,000	176,000	192,000	208,000	224,000	240,000
<b>Additional Inspections</b>														
Inspect the CV/Universal joints.		X			X			X			X			X
Inspect front suspension, tie rod ends, and replace if necessary.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing, change axle fluid.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect the brake linings, parking brake function.	X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
<b>Additional Maintenance</b>														
Replace engine air filter.		X			X			X			X			X
Replace spark plugs. <sup>1</sup>									X					
Flush and replace the engine coolant at 10 years or 150,000 miles (240,000 km) whichever comes first.									X					X

<b>Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first)</b>	<b>20,000</b>	<b>30,000</b>	<b>40,000</b>	<b>50,000</b>	<b>60,000</b>	<b>70,000</b>	<b>80,000</b>	<b>90,000</b>	<b>100,000</b>	<b>110,000</b>	<b>120,000</b>	<b>130,000</b>	<b>140,000</b>	<b>150,000</b>
<b>Or Years:</b>	<b>2</b>	<b>3</b>	<b>4</b>	<b>5</b>	<b>6</b>	<b>7</b>	<b>8</b>	<b>9</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>11</b>	<b>12</b>	<b>13</b>	<b>14</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>Or Kilometers:</b>	<b>32,000</b>	<b>48,000</b>	<b>64,000</b>	<b>80,000</b>	<b>96,000</b>	<b>112,000</b>	<b>128,000</b>	<b>144,000</b>	<b>160,000</b>	<b>176,000</b>	<b>192,000</b>	<b>208,000</b>	<b>224,000</b>	<b>240,000</b>
Change the automatic transmission fluid (AS66RC Transmission Only).		X						X						X
Change the automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (AS66RC Transmission Only).					X						X			
Inspect the transfer case fluid, change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.		X			X			X			X			X
Change the transfer case fluid.											X			
Inspect and replace PCV valve if necessary.									X					

1. The spark plug change interval is mileage based only, yearly intervals do not apply.



**WARNING!**

- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.
- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.

**Heavy Duty Use Of The Vehicle**

Change engine oil at 4,000 miles (6,500 km) or 350 hours of engine run time if the vehicle is operated in a dusty and off road environment or is operated predominately at idle or only very low engine RPM's. This type of vehicle use is considered Severe Duty.

## SCHEDULED SERVICING — 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE

**CAUTION!**

Failure to perform the required maintenance items may result in damage to the vehicle.

**At Each Stop For Fuel**

Check the engine oil level at least 30 minutes after a fully warmed engine is shut off. Checking the oil level while the vehicle is on level ground will improve the accuracy of the oil level reading. Add oil only when the level is at or below the ADD or MIN mark.

**Once A Month**

- Inspect the batteries, and clean and tighten the terminals as required.
- Check the fluid levels of the coolant reservoir, brake master cylinder, and automatic transmission, and add as needed.

**At Each Oil Change**

- Change the engine oil filter.
- Inspect the exhaust system.
- Inspect engine air filter.
- Check the coolant level, hoses, and clamps.
- Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.
- Lube the front drive shaft fitting (4X4 models only).

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.

## Oil Change Indicator System – Cummins Diesel

Your vehicle is equipped with an engine oil change indicator system. This system will alert you when it is time to change your engine oil by displaying the words “Oil Change Due” in your instrument cluster display. The oil change reminder will remind the owner to change the engine oil every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 500 hours, whichever comes first, except for the Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability that are using greater than 5% levels of biodiesel, which are 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or 400 hours, whichever comes first. Failure to change the engine oil per the maintenance schedule can result in internal engine damage.

**Replace the engine oil and oil filter every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months, or sooner if prompted by the oil change indicator system. Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months, whichever comes first.**

## NOTE:

- Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months or 500 Hours, whichever comes first.
- Replace the engine oil and oil filter every 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or 400 hours, whichever comes first when running greater than 5% levels of biodiesel (Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability).

If Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability are operated with greater than 5% levels of biodiesel, the oil change interval must not exceed 12,500 miles (20,000 km) or 400 hours, whichever comes first under any circumstances. See the Fuel Requirements section for more information regarding operation with biodiesel blend (B6-B20) fuel meeting ASTM specification D-7467.

## Perform Service Indicator – Cummins Diesel

Your vehicle will require emissions maintenance at a set interval. To help remind you when this maintenance is due, the instrument cluster will display “Perform Service”. When the “Perform Service” message is displayed on the instrument cluster it is necessary to have the emissions maintenance performed. Emissions maintenance may include replacing the Closed Crankcase Ventilation (CCV) filter element. The procedure for clearing and resetting the “Perform Service” indicator message is located in the appropriate Service Information.



## Maintenance Plan – Cummins Diesel Engine

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):	7,500	15,000	22,500	30,000	37,500	45,000	52,500	60,000	67,500	75,000	82,500	90,000	97,500	105,000	112,500	120,000	127,500	135,000	142,500	150,000	
Or Months:	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120	
Or Kilometers:	12,000	24,000	36,000	48,000	60,000	72,000	84,000	96,000	108,000	120,000	132,000	144,000	156,000	168,000	180,000	192,000	204,000	216,000	228,000	240,000	
Change engine oil every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months or 500 Hours or sooner if prompted by the oil change indicator system, whichever comes first. <sup>1</sup>		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
<b>Additional Inspections</b>																					
Check the Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) tank, refill if necessary.	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Rotate the tires.	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Lubricate front drive shaft fitting (4x4).	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	
Inspect front end, and lubricate — If equipped with serviceable fittings.	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):	7,500	15,000	22,500	30,000	37,500	45,000	52,500	60,000	67,500	75,000	82,500	90,000	97,500	105,000	112,500	120,000	127,500	135,000	142,500	150,000	
Or Months:	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120	
Or Kilometers:	12,000	24,000	36,000	48,000	60,000	72,000	84,000	96,000	108,000	120,000	132,000	144,000	156,000	168,000	180,000	192,000	204,000	216,000	228,000	240,000	
Inspect engine air filter, replace if necessary. <sup>2</sup>		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect the front suspension, tie rod ends and boot seals for cracks or leaks and all parts for damage, wear, improper looseness or end play; replace if necessary.		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X	
Inspect the brake linings.			X			X			X			X			X			X			
Inspect and adjust parking brake.			X			X			X			X			X			X			
Inspect drive belt; replace as necessary.			X			X			X			X			X			X			
Inspect wheel bearings.				X				X				X				X				X	
<b>Additional Maintenance</b>																					
Replace cabin air filter.			X			X			X			X			X			X			



# SERVICING AND MAINTENANCE

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):	7,500	15,000	22,500	30,000	37,500	45,000	52,500	60,000	67,500	75,000	82,500	90,000	97,500	105,000	112,500	120,000	127,500	135,000	142,500	150,000
Or Months:	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120
Or Kilometers:	12,000	24,000	36,000	48,000	60,000	72,000	84,000	96,000	108,000	120,000	132,000	144,000	156,000	168,000	180,000	192,000	204,000	216,000	228,000	240,000
Replace engine fuel filter element.		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X
Replace chassis mounted fuel filter element.		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X		X
Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces. If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing change the axle fluid. <sup>3</sup>																				
Inspect the transfer case fluid (4x4), change for any of the following: police, taxi, fleet, or frequent trailer towing.				X				X				X				X				X

Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):	7,500	15,000	22,500	30,000	37,500	45,000	52,500	60,000	67,500	75,000	82,500	90,000	97,500	105,000	112,500	120,000	127,500	135,000	142,500	150,000
Or Months:	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120
Or Kilometers:	12,000	24,000	36,000	48,000	60,000	72,000	84,000	96,000	108,000	120,000	132,000	144,000	156,000	168,000	180,000	192,000	204,000	216,000	228,000	240,000
Change the transfer case fluid (4x4).								X								X				
Change automatic transmission fluid (AS69RC transmission only).				X				X				X				X				X
Change the automatic transmission fluid and sump filter (AS69RC transmission only).								X								X				
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter(s) if using your vehicle for any of the following: police, fleet, or frequent trailer towing (68RFE transmission only).								X								X				
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter(s).																X				



Mileage or time passed (whichever comes first):	7,500	15,000	22,500	30,000	37,500	45,000	52,500	60,000	67,500	75,000	82,500	90,000	97,500	105,000	112,500	120,000	127,500	135,000	142,500	150,000
Or Months:	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60	66	72	78	84	90	96	102	108	114	120
Or Kilometers:	12,000	24,000	36,000	48,000	60,000	72,000	84,000	96,000	108,000	120,000	132,000	144,000	156,000	168,000	180,000	192,000	204,000	216,000	228,000	240,000
Replace Crankcase Ventilation Filter (CCV).										X										X
Flush and replace power steering fluid.													X							
Flush and replace engine coolant. <sup>4</sup>																				X

- Under no circumstances should oil change intervals exceed 15,000 miles (24,000 km) or 12 months or 500 Hours, whichever comes first.
- Under no circumstances should the air cleaner filter element exceed 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months, whichever comes first.
- Inspect the front and rear axle surfaces every 20,000 miles (32,000 km). If gear oil leakage is suspected, check the fluid level. If using your vehicle for police, taxi, fleet, off-road or frequent trailer towing change the axle fluid every 20,000 miles (32,000 km).
- The manufacturer highly recommends that all cooling system service, maintenance, and repairs be performed by your local authorized dealer.

Inspection and service should also be performed anytime a malfunction is observed or suspected. Retain all receipts.



### WARNING!

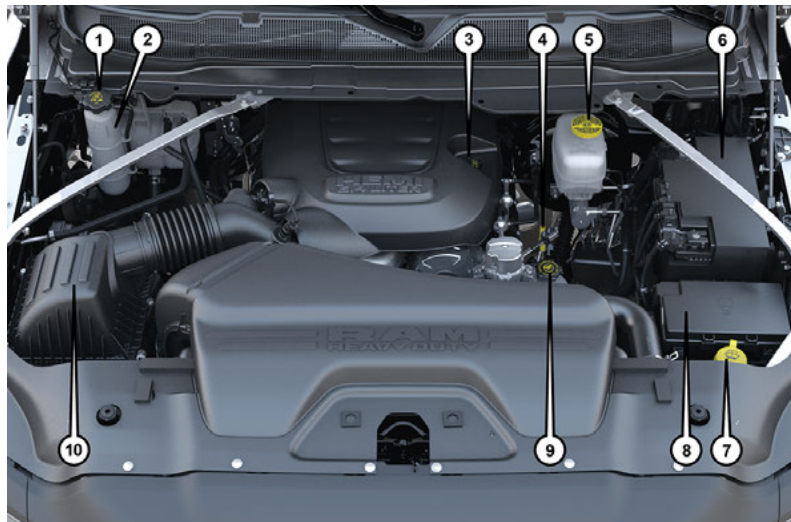
- You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Do only service work for which you have the knowledge and the right equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.
- Failure to properly inspect and maintain your vehicle could result in a component malfunction and effect vehicle handling and performance. This could cause an accident.



### CAUTION!

The manufacturer highly recommends that all cooling system service, maintenance, and repairs be performed by your local authorized dealer.

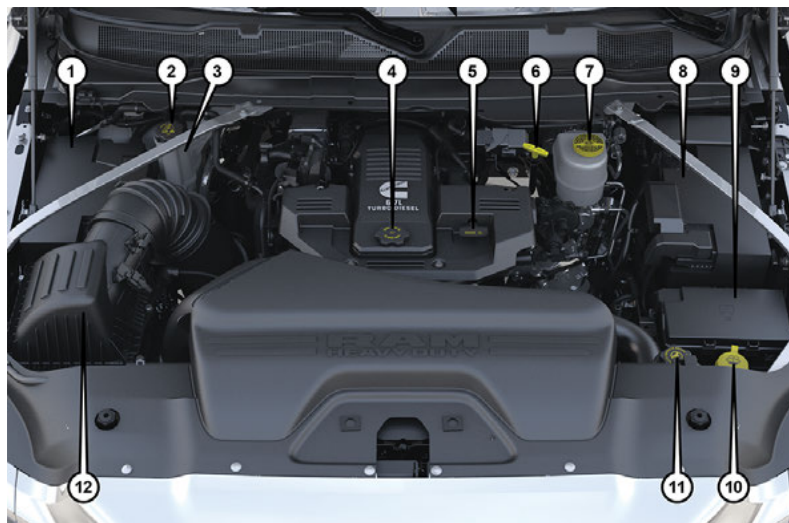


**ENGINE COMPARTMENT****6.4L Engine**

- 1 — Engine Coolant Pressure Cap
- 2 — Engine Coolant Reservoir
- 3 — Engine Oil Fill
- 4 — Engine Oil Dipstick
- 5 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

- 6 — Battery
- 7 — Washer Fluid Reservoir
- 8 — Distribution Center (Fuses)
- 9 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir
- 10 — Air Cleaner Filter

## 6.7L Diesel Engine — Six-Speed AS69RC HD (3500/Chassis Cab Models)



1 — Battery

2 — Engine Coolant Pressure Cap

3 — Engine Coolant Reservoir

4 — Engine Oil Fill

5 — Engine Oil Dipstick

6 — Automatic Transmission Dipstick

7 — Brake Fluid Reservoir

8 — Battery

9 — Power Distribution Center

10 — Washer Fluid Reservoir

11 — Power Steering Fluid Reservoir

12 — Air Cleaner Filter



## DEALER SERVICE — 6.7L DIESEL ENGINE

Your authorized dealer has the qualified service personnel, special tools, and equipment to perform all service operations in an expert manner. Service Manuals are available which include detailed service information for your vehicle. Refer to these Service Manuals before attempting any procedure yourself.

**NOTE:** Intentional tampering with emissions control systems may void your warranty and could result in civil penalties being assessed against you.



### WARNING!

You can be badly injured working on or around a motor vehicle. Only do service work for which you have the knowledge and the proper equipment. If you have any doubt about your ability to perform a service job, take your vehicle to a competent mechanic.

### Engine Air Cleaner Filter



### WARNING!

The air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) provides a measure of protection. Do not remove the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) unless such removal is necessary for repair or maintenance. Make sure that no one is near the engine compartment before starting the vehicle with the air induction system (air cleaner, hoses, etc.) removed. Failure to do so can result in serious personal injury.



### CAUTION!

All air entering the engine intake must be filtered. The abrasive particles in unfiltered air will cause rapid wear to engine components.

The condition of the air cleaner filter is monitored by the Engine Control Module. The “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message will display in the instrument cluster when service is required. Refer to “Instrument Cluster Display” in “Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel” for further information.

The “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message could be displayed periodically. This is because engine air flow requirements change based on driving conditions. As the filter becomes more restrictive and air flow requirements increase the “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message will be displayed. The message may not be displayed in subsequent drive cycles if the same conditions are not met. The air filter element should be replaced within 250 miles (402 km) from the first time this message is displayed to ensure proper engine operation during all driving conditions.



### CAUTION!

Driving with a restricted air filter can cause engine damage. Driving in dusty environments for extended periods will lead to rapid air filter plugging. Action should be taken as soon as the “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message is displayed.

If the vehicle experiences a sudden loss of engine power while being driven in heavy snow or rain, or when plowing snow, and/or the “SERVICE AIR FILTER” message is displayed on the instrument cluster along with a chime that repeats every 60 seconds, visually inspect the air filter for snow/ice

build up or extreme water saturation. If the air filter is not damaged, remove all snow/ice and reinstall air filter. If the air filter is damaged, replace filter element.

**NOTE:**

The air filter housing contains a Mass Air Flow sensor. This sensor is critical to proper engine operation and component longevity. Any damage or modification to this sensor could result in major engine and/or exhaust aftertreatment damage. We recommend you use Mopar brand parts.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Air Filter Monitor, a visual inspection of the air cleaner filter element is recommended every 15,000 miles (24,000km) or 12 months – whichever occurs first. **Under no circumstances should the air cleaner filter element exceed 30,000 miles (48,000 km) or 24 months, whichever comes first.**



**CAUTION!**

Many aftermarket performance air filter elements do not adequately filter the air entering the engine. Use of such filters can severely damage your engine.

**Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter**

There are two fuel filter assemblies. One is located on the driver's side of the engine. The best access to this water drain valve is from under the hood. The second one is on the under body, located in front of the rear axle above the drive shaft on pick-up models. The Chassis Cab models second filter location is on the frame behind the front axle. The best access to this water drain valve is from under the vehicle.



**CAUTION!**

- Do not drain the fuel/water separator filter when the engine is running.
- Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.

If water is detected in the water separator while the engine is running, or while the ignition switch is in the ON position, the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” will illuminate and an audible chime will be heard five times. At this point you should stop the engine and drain the water from both of the filters.



**CAUTION!**

If the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” remains on, DO NOT START the engine before you drain water from the fuel filters to avoid engine damage.

If the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” comes on and a single chime is heard while you are driving, or with the ignition switch in the ON position, there may be a problem with your water separator wiring or sensor. See your authorized dealer for service.

Upon proper draining of the water from both fuel filters, the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” will remain illuminated for approximately 10 seconds. If the water was drained while the engine was running, the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” may remain on for approximately three minutes.

**NOTE:**

Care should be taken in disposing of used fluids from your vehicle. Used fluids, indiscriminately discarded, can present a problem to the environment. Contact an authorized dealer, service station, or government agency for advice on recycling programs and for where used fluids and filters can be properly disposed of in your area.



Drain the fuel/water separator filters when the “Water In Fuel Indicator Light” is ON. Within 10 minutes of vehicle shutdown, turn the engine mounted filter drain valve (located on the side of the filter assembly) counterclockwise 1/4 turn, and turn the under body mounted filter drain valve (located on the bottom of the filter assembly) counterclockwise 1 full turn. Then turn the ignition switch to the ON position, and allow any accumulated water to drain. Leave the drain valve open until all water and contaminants have been removed. When clean fuel is visible, close the drain valves by turning them fully clockwise, and turn the ignition switch to OFF.

If more than a couple ounces/milliliters of fuel have been drained, follow the directions for “Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel.”

### Engine Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement

#### NOTE:

- Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturer's filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.

- The engine mounted filter housing is equipped with a No-Filter-No-Run (NFNR) feature. Engine will not run if:
  - a. No filter is installed.
  - b. Inferior/Non-approved filter is used. Use of OEM filter is required to ensure vehicle will run.



#### CAUTION!

- Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.
- Do not prefill the fuel filter when installing a new fuel filter. There is a possibility debris could be introduced into the fuel filter during this action. It is best to install the filter dry and allow the in-tank lift pump to prime the fuel system.

1. Ensure engine is turned off.
2. Place drain pan under the fuel filter drain hose.
3. Open the water drain valve 1/4 turn counterclockwise and completely drain fuel and water into the approved container.

4. Close the water drain valve.
5. Remove lid using a socket or strap wrench. Rotate counterclockwise for removal. Remove used o-ring and discard it.
6. Remove the used filter cartridge from the housing and dispose of according to your local regulations.
7. Wipe clean the sealing surfaces of the lid and housing.
8. Install new o-ring back into ring groove on the filter housing and lubricate with clean engine oil.
9. Remove new filter cartridge from plastic bag and install into housing.

#### NOTE:

Do not remove cartridge from bag until you reach this step in order to keep cartridge clean.

10. Push down on the cartridge to ensure it is properly seated. **Do not pre-fill the filter housing with fuel.**

11. Install lid onto housing and tighten to 22.5 ft lbs (30.5 N.m). Do not over-tighten the lid.
12. Prime the engine using the procedure in "Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel." Then start the engine and confirm there are no leaks.

### Underbody Mounted Fuel Filter Replacement

#### NOTE:

- Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturer's filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.
- The underbody mounted filter housing will cause the engine not to run if there is no filter installed.



#### CAUTION!

- Diesel fuel will damage blacktop paving surfaces. Drain the filter into an appropriate container.
- Do not prefill the fuel filter when installing a new fuel filter. There is a possibility debris could be introduced into the fuel filter during this action. It is best to install the filter dry and allow the in-tank lift pump to prime the fuel system.

1. Ensure engine is turned off.
2. Place drain pan under the fuel filter drain hose.
3. Open the water drain valve 1 full turn counterclockwise and completely drain fuel and water into the approved container.
4. Close the water drain valve.
5. Remove lid using a socket or strap wrench. Rotate counterclockwise for removal. Remove used o-ring and discard it.

6. Remove the used filter cartridge from the housing and dispose of according to your local regulations.
7. Wipe clean the sealing surfaces of the lid and housing.
8. Install new o-ring back into ring groove on the filter housing and lubricate with clean engine oil.

#### NOTE:

WIF sensor is re-usable. Service kit comes with new o-ring for filter canister and WIF sensor.

### Priming If The Engine Has Run Out Of Fuel



#### WARNING!

Do not open the high pressure fuel system with the engine running. Engine operation causes high fuel pressure. High pressure fuel spray can cause serious injury or death.

1. Add a substantial amount of fuel to the tank, approximately 2 to 5 gal (8L to 19L).
2. Two priming cycles must be completed. Turn ignition switch to the run position.



This will activate the in tank fuel pump for approximately 30 seconds. Turn ignition switch to the off position, and leave off for at least 5 seconds. Turn ignition switch to the run position to complete an additional priming cycle and activate the in tank fuel pump for approximately 30 seconds.

3. Start the engine using the “Normal Starting” procedure. Refer to “Starting Procedures” in “Starting and Operating” for further information.
4. Once the engine starts, allow the engine to idle for a minimum of 30 seconds.



#### CAUTION!

Do not engage the starter motor for more than 15 seconds at a time. Allow two minutes between the cranking intervals.

#### NOTE:

The engine may run rough until the air is forced from all the fuel lines.



#### WARNING!

Do not use alcohol or gasoline as a fuel blending agent. They can be unstable under certain conditions and be hazardous or explosive when mixed with diesel fuel.



#### CAUTION!

Due to lack of lubricants in alcohol or gasoline, the use of these fuels can cause damage to the fuel system.

#### NOTE:

- A maximum blend of 5% biodiesel, meeting ASTM specification D-975 may be used with your Cummins diesel engine. (Chassis Cab models not configured with B20 capability.)
- A maximum blend of 20% biodiesel, meeting ASTM specification D-7467 may be used with your Cummins diesel engine. (Pickup models and Chassis Cab models configured with B20 capability.)
- Use of biodiesel mixture in excess of 20% can negatively impact the fuel filter's ability to separate water from the fuel,

resulting in high pressure fuel system corrosion or damage.

- Ethanol blends are not recommended or approved for use with your Cummins diesel engine.
- In addition, commercially available fuel additives are not necessary for the proper operation of your Cummins diesel engine.

## HOISTING

A conventional floor jack may be used at the jacking locations. Refer to the graphics that show jacking locations. However, a floor jack or frame hoist must never be used on any other parts of the underbody.



#### CAUTION!

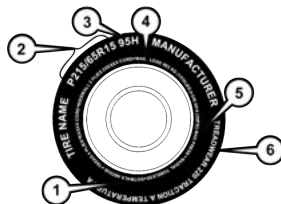
Never use a floor jack directly under the differential housing of a loaded truck or damage to your vehicle may result.

# TIRES

## Tire Safety Information

Tire safety information will cover aspects of the following information: Tire Markings, Tire Identification Numbers, Tire Terminology and Definitions, Tire Pressures, and Tire Loading.

## Tire Markings



## Tire Markings

- 1 — U.S. DOT Safety Standards Code (TIN)
- 2 — Size Designation
- 3 — Service Description
- 4 — Maximum Load
- 5 — Maximum Pressure
- 6 — Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades

### NOTE:

- P (Passenger) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. P-Metric tires have the letter “P” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: P215/65R15 95H.

- European — Metric tire sizing is based on European design standards. Tires designed to this standard have the tire size molded into the sidewall beginning with the section width. The letter “P” is absent from this tire size designation. Example: 215/65R15 96H.

- LT (Light Truck) — Metric tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards. The size designation for LT-Metric tires is the same as for P-Metric tires except for the letters “LT” that are molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: LT235/85R16.

- Temporary spare tires are designed for temporary emergency use only. Temporary high pressure compact spare tires have the letter “T” or “S” molded into the sidewall preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

- High flotation tire sizing is based on U.S. design standards and it begins with the tire diameter molded into the sidewall. Example: 31x10.5 R15 LT.



## Tire Sizing Chart

**EXAMPLE:**

**Example Size Designation: P215/65R15XL 95H, 215/65R15 96H, LT235/85R16C, T145/80D18 103M, 31x10.5 R15 LT**

**P** = Passenger car tire size based on U.S. design standards, or

"...blank..." = Passenger car tire based on European design standards, or

**LT** = Light truck tire based on U.S. design standards, or

**T or S** = Temporary spare tire or

**31** = Overall diameter in inches (in)

**215, 235, 145** = Section width in millimeters (mm)

**65, 85, 80** = Aspect ratio in percent (%)

Ratio of section height to section width of tire, or

**10.5** = Section width in inches (in)

**R** = Construction code

"R" means radial construction, or

"D" means diagonal or bias construction

**15, 16, 18** = Rim diameter in inches (in)

**Service Description:**

**95** = Load Index

A numerical code associated with the maximum load a tire can carry

**H** = Speed Symbol

A symbol indicating the range of speeds at which a tire can carry a load corresponding to its load index under certain operating conditions

The maximum speed corresponding to the speed symbol should only be achieved under specified operating conditions (i.e., tire pressure, vehicle loading, road conditions, and posted speed limits)

### EXAMPLE:

#### Load Identification:

Absence of the following load identification symbols on the sidewall of the tire indicates a Standard Load (SL) tire:

□ **XL** = Extra load (or reinforced) tire, or

□ **LL** = Light load tire or

□ **C, D, E, F, G** = Load range associated with the maximum load a tire can carry at a specified pressure

**Maximum Load** – Maximum load indicates the maximum load this tire is designed to carry

**Maximum Pressure** – Maximum pressure indicates the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire

#### Tire Identification Number (TIN)

The TIN may be found on one or both sides of the tire; however, the date code may only be on one side. Tires with white sidewalls will have the full TIN, including the date code, located on the white sidewall side of the tire. Look for the TIN on the outboard side of black sidewall tires as mounted on the vehicle. If the TIN is not found on the outboard side, then you will find it on the inboard side of the tire.

### EXAMPLE:

DOT MA L9 ABCD 0301

**DOT** = Department of Transportation

□ This symbol certifies that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation tire safety standards and is approved for highway use

**MA** = Code representing the tire manufacturing location (two digits)

**L9** = Code representing the tire size (two digits)



**EXAMPLE:**

**ABCD** = Code used by the tire manufacturer (one to four digits)

**03** = Number representing the week in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)

□ 03 means the 3rd week

**01** = Number representing the year in which the tire was manufactured (two digits)

□ 01 means the year 2001

□ Prior to July 2000, tire manufacturers were only required to have one number to represent the year in which the tire was manufactured.

Example: 031 could represent the 3rd week of 1981 or 1991

**Tire Terminology And Definitions**

<b>Term</b>	<b>Definition</b>
<b>B-Pillar</b>	The vehicle B-Pillar is the structural member of the body located behind the front door.
<b>Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>	Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. Inflation pressure is measured in units of PSI (pounds per square inch) or kPa (kilopascals).
<b>Maximum Inflation Pressure</b>	The maximum inflation pressure is the maximum permissible cold tire inflation pressure for this tire. The maximum inflation pressure is molded into the sidewall.
<b>Recommended Cold Tire Inflation Pressure</b>	Vehicle manufacturer's recommended cold tire inflation pressure as shown on the tire placard.
<b>Tire Placard</b>	A label permanently attached to the vehicle describing the vehicle's loading capacity, the original equipment tire sizes and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures.

## Tire Loading And Tire Pressure

### NOTE:

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door.

Check the inflation pressure of each tire, including the spare tire (if equipped), at least monthly and inflate to the recommended pressure for your vehicle.

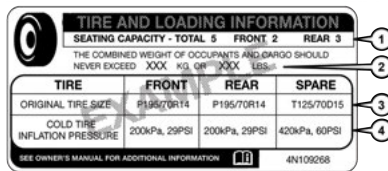


Example Tire Placard Location (Door)



Example Tire Placard Location (B-Pillar)

### Tire And Loading Information Placard



TIRE AND LOADING INFORMATION			
SEATING CAPACITY - TOTAL 5 FRONT 2 REAR 3			
THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS.			
TIRE	FRONT	REAR	SPARE
ORIGINAL TIRE SIZE:	P195/70R14	P195/70R14	T125/70D15
COLD TIRE INFLATION PRESSURE	200kPa, 29PSI	200kPa, 29PSI	420kPa, 60PSI
SEE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR ADDITIONAL INFORMATION			
4N109268			

Tire And Loading Information Placard

This placard tells you important information about the:

1. Number of people that can be carried in the vehicle.
2. Total weight your vehicle can carry.
3. Tire size designed for your vehicle.
4. Cold tire inflation pressures for the front, rear, and spare tires.

### Loading

The vehicle maximum load on the tire must not exceed the load carrying capacity of the tire on your vehicle. You will not exceed the tire's load carrying capacity if you adhere to the loading conditions, tire size, and cold tire inflation pressures specified on the Tire and Loading Information placard in "Vehicle Loading" in the "Starting And Operating" section of this manual.

### NOTE:

Under a maximum loaded vehicle condition, gross axle weight ratings (GAWRs) for the front and rear axles must not be exceeded.

To determine the maximum loading conditions of your vehicle, locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and



cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs” on the Tire and Loading Information placard. The combined weight of occupants, cargo/luggage and trailer tongue weight (if applicable) should never exceed the weight referenced here.

### **Steps For Determining Correct Load Limit—**

- (1) Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs.” on your vehicle's placard.
- (2) Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
- (3) Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.

(4) The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5x150) = 650 lbs.)

(5) Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

(6) If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

## Metric Example For Load Limit

For example, if “XXX” amount equals 635 kg and there will be five 68 kg passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 295 kg (635-340 (5x68) = 295 kg) as shown in step 4.

## NOTE:

□ If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. The following table shows examples on how to calculate total load, cargo/luggage, and towing capacities of your vehicle with varying seating configurations

and number and size of occupants. This table is for illustration purposes only and may not be accurate for the seating and load carry capacity of your vehicle.

□ For the following example, the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 865 lbs (392 kg).

Occupants			Combined weight of occupants and cargo from Tire Placard	MINUS	Combined Occupant's weight	=	AVAILABLE Cargo/Luggage and Trailer Tongue Weight
TOTAL	FRONT	REAR					
<b>EXAMPLE 1</b>							
5	2	3	865 lbs	minus	670 lbs	=	195 lbs
Occupant 1: 200 lbs Occupant 2: 130 lbs Occupant 3: 160 lbs Occupant 4: 100 lbs Occupant 5: 80 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 670 lbs							
<b>EXAMPLE 2</b>							
3	2	1	865 lbs	minus	540 lbs	=	325 lbs
Occupant 1: 210 lbs Occupant 2: 180 lbs Occupant 3: 150 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 540 lbs							
<b>EXAMPLE 3</b>							
2	2	0	865 lbs	minus	400 lbs	=	465 lbs
Occupant 1: 200 lbs Occupant 2: 200 lbs TOTAL WEIGHT: 400 lbs							

811a4d11



**WARNING!**

Overloading of your tires is dangerous. Overloading can cause tire failure, affect vehicle handling, and increase your stopping distance. Use tires of the recommended load capacity for your vehicle. Never overload them.

**Tires – General Information****Tire Pressure**

Proper tire inflation pressure is essential to the safe and satisfactory operation of your vehicle. Four primary areas are affected by improper tire pressure:

- Safety
- Fuel Economy
- Tread Wear
- Ride Comfort and Vehicle Stability

**Safety****WARNING!**

- Improperly inflated tires are dangerous and can cause collisions.

*(Continued)*

**WARNING! (Continued)**

- Underinflation increases tire flexing and can result in overheating and tire failure.
- Overinflation reduces a tire's ability to cushion shock. Objects on the road and chuckholes can cause damage that result in tire failure.
- Overinflated or underinflated tires can affect vehicle handling and can fail suddenly, resulting in loss of vehicle control.
- Unequal tire pressures can cause steering problems. You could lose control of your vehicle.
- Unequal tire pressures from one side of the vehicle to the other can cause the vehicle to drift to the right or left.
- Always drive with each tire inflated to the recommended cold tire inflation pressure.

Both under-inflation and over-inflation affect the stability of the vehicle and can produce a feeling of sluggish response or over responsiveness in the steering.

**NOTE:**

- Unequal tire pressures from side to side may cause erratic and unpredictable steering response.
- Unequal tire pressure from side to side may cause the vehicle to drift left or right.

**Fuel Economy**

Underinflated tires will increase tire rolling resistance resulting in higher fuel consumption.

**Tread Wear**

Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause abnormal wear patterns and reduced tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.

**Ride Comfort And Vehicle Stability**

Proper tire inflation contributes to a comfortable ride. Over-inflation produces a jarring and uncomfortable ride.

**Tire Inflation Pressures**

The proper cold tire inflation pressure is listed on the driver's side B-Pillar or rear edge of the driver's side door.

At least once a month:

- ❑ Check and adjust tire pressure with a good quality pocket-type pressure gauge. Do not make a visual judgement when determining proper inflation. Tires may look properly inflated even when they are under-inflated.
- ❑ Inspect tires for signs of tire wear or visible damage.



### CAUTION!

After inspecting or adjusting the tire pressure, always reinstall the valve stem cap. This will prevent moisture and dirt from entering the valve stem, which could damage the valve stem.

Inflation pressures specified on the placard are always “cold tire inflation pressure”. Cold tire inflation pressure is defined as the tire pressure after the vehicle has not been driven for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km) after sitting for a minimum of three hours. The cold tire inflation pressure must not exceed the maximum inflation pressure molded into the tire sidewall.

Check tire pressures more often if subject to a wide range of outdoor temperatures, as tire pressures vary with temperature changes.

Tire pressures change by approximately 1 psi (7 kPa) per 12°F (7°C) of air temperature change. Keep this in mind when checking tire pressure inside a garage, especially in the Winter.

Example: If garage temperature = 68°F (20°C) and the outside temperature = 32°F (0°C) then the cold tire inflation pressure should be increased by 3 psi (21 kPa), which equals 1 psi (7 kPa) for every 12°F (7°C) for this outside temperature condition.

Tire pressure may increase from 2 to 6 psi (13 to 40 kPa) during operation. DO NOT reduce this normal pressure build up or your tire pressure will be too low.

### Tire Pressures For High Speed Operation

The manufacturer advocates driving at safe speeds and within posted speed limits. Where speed limits or conditions are such that the vehicle can be driven at high speeds, maintaining correct tire inflation pressure is very important. Increased tire pressure and reduced vehicle loading may be required for high-speed vehicle operation. Refer to an

authorized tire dealer or original equipment vehicle dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.



### WARNING!

High speed driving with your vehicle under maximum load is dangerous. The added strain on your tires could cause them to fail. You could have a serious collision. Do not drive a vehicle loaded to the maximum capacity at continuous speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h).

### Radial Ply Tires



### WARNING!

Combining radial ply tires with other types of tires on your vehicle will cause your vehicle to handle poorly. The instability could cause a collision. Always use radial ply tires in sets of four. Never combine them with other types of tires.



**Tire Repair**

If your tire becomes damaged, it may be repaired if it meets the following criteria:

- The tire has not been driven on when flat.
- The damage is only on the tread section of your tire (sidewall damage is not repairable).
- The puncture is no greater than a ¼ of an inch (6 mm).

Consult an authorized tire dealer for tire repairs and additional information.

Damaged Run Flat tires, or Run Flat tires that have experienced a loss of pressure should be replaced immediately with another Run Flat tire of identical size and service description (Load Index and Speed Symbol). Replace the tire pressure sensor as well as it is not designed to be reused.

**Run Flat Tires — If Equipped**

Run Flat tires allow you the capability to drive 50 miles (80 km) at 50 mph (80 km/h) after a rapid loss of inflation pressure. This rapid loss of inflation is referred to as the Run Flat mode. A Run Flat mode occurs when the tire inflation pressure is of/or below 14 psi (96 kPa). Once a Run Flat tire reaches

the run flat mode it has limited driving capabilities and needs to be replaced immediately. A Run Flat tire is not repairable. When a run flat tire is changed after driving with underinflated tire condition, please replace the TPM sensor as it is not designed to be reused when driven under run flat mode (14 psi (96 kPa)) condition.

**NOTE:**

TPM Sensor must be replaced after driving the vehicle on a flat tire condition.


It is not recommended driving a vehicle loaded at full capacity or to tow a trailer while a tire is in the run flat mode.

See the tire pressure monitoring section for more information.

**Tire Spinning**

When stuck in mud, sand, snow, or ice conditions, do not spin your vehicle's wheels above 30 mph (48 km/h) or for longer than 30 seconds continuously without stopping.

Refer to “Freeing A Stuck Vehicle” in “In Case Of Emergency” for further information.

	<b>WARNING!</b>
<p>Fast spinning tires can be dangerous. Forces generated by excessive wheel speeds may cause tire damage or failure. A tire could explode and injure someone. Do not spin your vehicle's wheels faster than 30 mph (48 km/h) for more than 30 seconds continuously when you are stuck, and do not let anyone near a spinning wheel, no matter what the speed.</p>	

**Tread Wear Indicators**

Tread wear indicators are in the original equipment tires to help you in determining when your tires should be replaced.



**Tire Tread**

- 1 — Worn Tire
- 2 — New Tire


These indicators are molded into the bottom of the tread grooves. They will appear as bands when the tread depth becomes a 1/16 of an inch (1.6 mm). When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the tire should be replaced.

Refer to “Replacement Tires” in this section for further information.

### Life Of Tire

The service life of a tire is dependent upon varying factors including, but not limited to:

- Driving style.
- Tire pressure - Improper cold tire inflation pressures can cause uneven wear patterns to develop across the tire tread. These abnormal wear patterns will reduce tread life, resulting in the need for earlier tire replacement.
- Distance driven.
- Performance tires, tires with a speed rating of V or higher, and Summer tires typically have a reduced tread life. Rotation of these tires per the vehicle scheduled maintenance is highly recommended.

	<b>WARNING!</b>
Tires and the spare tire should be replaced after six years, regardless of the remaining tread. Failure to follow this warning can result in sudden tire failure. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death.	

### NOTE:

Wheel Valve Stem must be replaced as well when installing new tires due to wear and tear in existing tires.

Keep dismantled tires in a cool, dry place with as little exposure to light as possible. Protect tires from contact with oil, grease, and gasoline.

### Replacement Tires

The tires on your new vehicle provide a balance of many characteristics. They should be inspected regularly for wear and correct cold tire inflation pressures. The manufacturer strongly recommends that you use tires equivalent to the originals in size, quality and performance when replacement is needed. Refer to the paragraph on “Tread Wear Indicators” in this section. Refer to the Tire and Loading Information placard or the

Vehicle Certification Label for the size designation of your tire. The Load Index and Speed Symbol for your tire will be found on the original equipment tire sidewall.

See the Tire Sizing Chart example found in the “Tire Safety Information” section of this manual for more information relating to the Load Index and Speed Symbol of a tire.

It is recommended to replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling. If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

It is recommended you contact an authorized tire dealer or original equipment dealer with any questions you may have on tire specifications or capability. Failure to use equivalent replacement tires may adversely affect the safety, handling, and ride of your vehicle.



**WARNING!**

- Do not use a tire, wheel size, load rating, or speed rating other than that specified for your vehicle. Some combinations of unapproved tires and wheels may change suspension dimensions and performance characteristics, resulting in changes to steering, handling, and braking of your vehicle. This can cause unpredictable handling and stress to steering and suspension components. You could lose control and have a collision resulting in serious injury or death. Use only the tire and wheel sizes with load ratings approved for your vehicle.
- Never use a tire with a smaller load index or capacity, other than what was originally equipped on your vehicle. Using a tire with a smaller load index could result in tire overloading and failure. You could lose control and have a collision.
- Failure to equip your vehicle with tires having adequate speed capability can result in sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

**CAUTION!**

Replacing original tires with tires of a different size may result in false speedometer and odometer readings.

**Tire Types****All Season Tires — If Equipped**

All Season tires provide traction for all seasons (Spring, Summer, Fall, and Winter). Traction levels may vary between different all season tires. All season tires can be identified by the M+S, M&S, M/S or MS designation on the tire sidewall. Use all season tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

**Summer Or Three Season Tires — If Equipped**

Summer tires provide traction in both wet and dry conditions, and are not intended to be driven in snow or on ice. If your vehicle is equipped with Summer tires, be aware these tires are not designed for Winter or cold driving conditions. Install Winter tires on your vehicle when ambient temperatures are less than 40°F (5°C) or if roads are covered

with ice or snow. For more information, contact an authorized dealer.

Summer tires do not contain the all season designation or mountain/snowflake symbol on the tire sidewall. Use Summer tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

**WARNING!**

Do not use Summer tires in snow/ice conditions. You could lose vehicle control, resulting in severe injury or death. Driving too fast for conditions also creates the possibility of loss of vehicle control.

**Snow Tires**

Some areas of the country require the use of snow tires during the Winter. Snow tires can be identified by a “mountain/snowflake” symbol on the tire sidewall.



If you need snow tires, select tires equivalent in size and type to the original equipment tires. Use snow tires only in sets of four; failure to do so may adversely affect the safety and handling of your vehicle.

Snow tires generally have lower speed ratings than what was originally equipped with your vehicle and should not be operated at sustained speeds over 75 mph (120 km/h). For speeds above 75 mph (120 km/h) refer to original equipment or an authorized tire dealer for recommended safe operating speeds, loading and cold tire inflation pressures.

While studded tires improve performance on ice, skid and traction capability on wet or dry surfaces may be poorer than that of non-studded tires. Some states prohibit studded tires; therefore, local laws should be checked before using these tire types.

### Spare Tires — If Equipped

#### NOTE:

For vehicles equipped with Tire Service Kit instead of a spare tire, please refer to “Tire Service Kit” in “In Case Of Emergency” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.



#### CAUTION!

Because of the reduced ground clearance, do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash with a compact or limited use temporary spare installed. Damage to the vehicle may result.

Refer to the “Towing Requirements - Tires” in “Starting And Operating” in the Owner’s Manual for restrictions when towing with a spare tire designated for temporary emergency use.

### Spare Tire Matching Original Equipped Tire And Wheel — If Equipped

Your vehicle may be equipped with a spare tire and wheel equivalent in look and function to the original equipment tire and wheel found on the front or rear axle of your vehicle. This spare tire may be used in the tire rotation for your vehicle. If your vehicle has this option, refer to an authorized tire dealer for the recommended tire rotation pattern.

### Compact Spare Tire — If Equipped

The compact spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a compact spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver’s side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire. Compact spare tire descriptions begin with the letter “T” or “S” preceding the size designation. Example: T145/80D18 103M.

T, S = Temporary Spare Tire

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the compact spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the compact spare tire. Do not install more than one compact spare tire and wheel on the vehicle at any given time.



**WARNING!**

Compact and collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

**Collapsible Spare Tire — If Equipped**

The collapsible spare is for temporary emergency use only. You can identify if your vehicle is equipped with a collapsible spare by looking at the spare tire description on the Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side door opening or on the sidewall of the tire.

Collapsible spare tire description example: 165/80-17 101P.

Since this tire has limited tread life, the original equipment tire should be repaired (or replaced) and reinstalled on your vehicle at the first opportunity.

Inflate collapsible tire only after the wheel is properly installed to the vehicle. Inflate the collapsible tire using the electric air pump before lowering the vehicle.

Do not install a wheel cover or attempt to mount a conventional tire on the collapsible spare wheel, since the wheel is designed specifically for the collapsible spare tire.

**WARNING!**

Compact and Collapsible spares are for temporary emergency use only. With these spares, do not drive more than 50 mph (80 km/h). Temporary use spares have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use spare tire needs to be replaced. Be sure to follow the warnings, which apply to your spare. Failure to do so could result in spare tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

**Full Size Spare — If Equipped**

The full size spare is for temporary emergency use only. This tire may look like the originally equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. This spare tire may have limited tread life. When the tread is worn to the tread wear indicators, the temporary use full size spare tire needs to be replaced. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.

**Limited Use Spare — If Equipped**

The limited use spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. This tire is identified by a label located on the limited use spare wheel. This label contains the driving limitations for this spare. This tire may look like the original equipped tire on the front or rear axle of your vehicle, but it is not. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. Since it is not the same as your original equipment tire, replace (or repair) the original equipment tire and reinstall on the vehicle at the first opportunity.



### WARNING!

Limited use spares are for emergency use only. Installation of this limited use spare tire affects vehicle handling. With this tire, do not drive more than the speed listed on the limited use spare wheel. Keep inflated to the cold tire inflation pressures listed on your Tire and Loading Information Placard located on the driver's side B-Pillar or the rear edge of the driver's side door. Replace (or repair) the original equipment tire at the first opportunity and reinstall it on your vehicle. Failure to do so could result in loss of vehicle control.

### Wheel And Wheel Trim Care

All wheels and wheel trim, especially aluminum and chrome plated wheels, should be cleaned regularly using mild (neutral Ph) soap and water to maintain their luster and to prevent corrosion. Wash wheels with the same soap solution recommended for the body of the vehicle and remember to always wash when the surfaces are not hot to the touch.

Your wheels are susceptible to deterioration caused by salt, sodium chloride, magnesium chloride, calcium chloride, etc., and other

road chemicals used to melt ice or control dust on dirt roads. Use a soft cloth or sponge and mild soap to wipe away promptly. Do not use harsh chemicals or a stiff brush. They can damage the wheel's protective coating that helps keep them from corroding and tarnishing.



### CAUTION!

Avoid products or automatic car washes that use acidic solutions or strong alkaline additives or harsh brushes. Many aftermarket wheel cleaners and automatic car washes may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

When cleaning extremely dirty wheels including excessive brake dust, care must be taken in the selection of tire and wheel cleaning chemicals and equipment to prevent damage to the wheels. Mopar Wheel Treatment or Mopar Chrome Cleaner or their equivalent is recommended or select a non-abrasive, non-acidic cleaner for aluminum or chrome wheels.



### CAUTION!

Do not use scouring pads, steel wool, a bristle brush, metal polishes or oven cleaner. These products may damage the wheel's protective finish. Such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Only car wash soap, Mopar Wheel Cleaner or equivalent is recommended.

### NOTE:

If you intend parking or storing your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle and apply the brakes to remove the water droplets from the brake components. This activity will remove the red rust on the brake rotors and prevent vehicle vibration when braking.



Dark Vapor Chrome, Black Satin Chrome, or Low Gloss Clear Coat Wheels



### CAUTION!

If your vehicle is equipped with these specialty wheels, DO NOT USE wheel cleaners, abrasives, or polishing compounds. They will permanently damage this finish and such damage is not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. HAND WASH ONLY USING MILD SOAP AND WATER WITH A SOFT CLOTH. Used on a regular basis; this is all that is required to maintain this finish.

## DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORTATION UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADES

The following tire grading categories were established by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration. The specific grade rating assigned by the tire's manufacturer in each category is shown on the sidewall of the tires on your vehicle.

All passenger vehicle tires must conform to Federal safety requirements in addition to these grades.

### Treadwear

The Treadwear grade is a comparative rating, based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### Traction Grades

The Traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. These grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement, as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.



### WARNING!

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

## Temperature Grades

The Temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat, when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance, which all passenger vehicle tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel, than the minimum required by law.



### WARNING!

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, under-inflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.



## WHEEL AND TIRE TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

Proper lug nut/bolt torque is very important to ensure that the wheel is properly mounted to the vehicle. Any time a wheel has been removed and reinstalled on the vehicle, the lug nuts/bolts should be torqued using a properly calibrated torque wrench using a high quality six sided (hex) deep wall socket.

### Torque Specifications

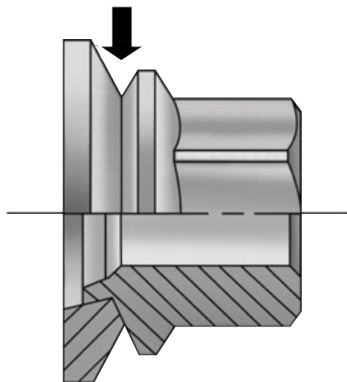
Lug Nut/Bolt Torque	Lug Nut/Bolt Type	**Lug Nut/Bolt Size	Lug Nut/Bolt Socket Size
120-150 Ft-Lbs (160-200 N·m)	Cone	M14 x 1.50	22 mm
130-160 Ft-Lbs (190-220 N·m)	Flanged		

\*\*Use only your authorized dealer recommended lug nuts/bolts and clean or remove any dirt or oil before tightening.

Inspect the wheel mounting surface prior to mounting the tire and remove any corrosion or loose particles.

### NOTE:

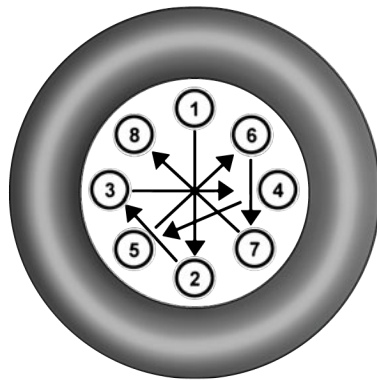
Dual wheels are flat mounted, center piloted. The lug nuts are a two-piece assembly. When the tires are being rotated or replaced, clean these lug nuts and add two drops of oil at the interface between the hex and the washer. Ensure that the socket is fully engaged on the lug nut/bolt (do not insert it half way).



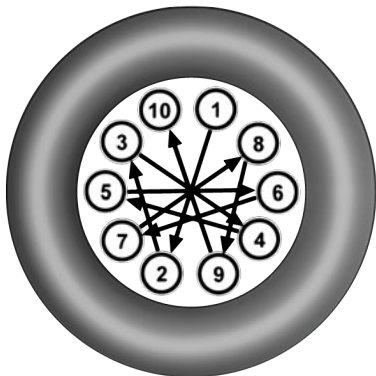
Oil Interface Location

Do not oil wheel studs. For chrome wheels, do not substitute with chrome plated wheel nuts.

Retighten the wheel nuts in the same sequence to the torques listed in the table. Go through the sequence a second time to verify that specific torque has been achieved. Retighten to specifications after 25 miles (40 km) and check the lug nut/bolt torque to be sure that all the lug nuts/bolts are properly seated against the wheel.



Wheel Nuts Numbered Sequence (8)



Wheel Nuts Numbered Sequence (10)

It is recommended that wheel stud nuts be kept torqued to specifications at all times. Torque wheel stud nuts to specifications at each lubrication interval.

All wheel nuts should be tightened occasionally to eliminate the possibility of wheel studs being sheared or the bolt holes in the wheels becoming elongated. This is especially important during the first few hundred miles/kilometers of operation to allow the wheel nuts to become properly set. All wheel nuts should first be firmly seated against the wheel. The wheel nuts should then be tightened to recommended torque. Tighten the

wheel nuts to final torque in increments. Progress around the bolt circle, tightening the wheel nut opposite to the wheel nut just previously tightened until final torque is achieved.

**WARNING!**

To avoid the risk of forcing the vehicle off the jack, do not tighten the lug nuts/bolts fully until the vehicle has been lowered. Failure to follow this warning may result in personal injury.

## FLUID CAPACITIES – GAS ENGINE

	U.S.	Metric
<b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>		
Standard Rear Tank	52 Gallons	197 Liters
Optional Midship Tank	22 Gallons	83 Liters
<b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>		
6.4L Engine (We recommend you use SAE 0W-40, Synthetic API Certified)	7 Quarts	6.6 Liters
<b>Cooling System</b>		
6.4L Engine (We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula).	16.6 Quarts	15.7 Liters



**FLUID CAPACITIES – 6.7L CUMMINS DIESEL ENGINE**

	<b>U.S.</b>	<b>Metric</b>
<b>Fuel (Approximate)</b>		
2500/3500 Standard Cab Longbed Models	28 Gallons	106 Liters
2500/3500 Crew/Mega Cab Shortbed Models	31 Gallons	129 Liters
2500/3500 Crew Cab Longbed Models	32 Gallons	132 Liters
Standard Rear Tank – Chassis Cab Only	52 Gallons	197 Liters
Optional Midship Tank – Chassis Cab Only	22 Gallons	83 Liters
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank (Approximate) – 2500/3500 Models	5.5 Gallons	21 Liters
Diesel Exhaust Fluid Tank (Approximate) – Chassis Cab	9 Gallons	34 Liters
<b>Engine Oil With Filter</b>		
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine	12 Quarts	11.4 Liters
<b>Cooling System</b>		
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine 2500/3500 with 68RFE (Mopar Engine Coolant/Antifreeze 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula)	22.0 Quarts	20.8 Liters
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine 3500 with AS69RC (Mopar Engine Coolant/Antifreeze 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula)	22.5 Quarts	21.3 Liters
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine Chassis Cab 3500/4500 with AS69RC (Mopar Engine Coolant/Antifreeze 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula)	22.3 Quarts	21.1 Liters
6.7L Turbo Diesel Engine Chassis Cab 5500 with AS69RC (Mopar Engine Coolant/Antifreeze 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula)	22.8 Quarts	21.6 Liters

# FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS – GAS ENGINE

## Engine

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Coolant	We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10-Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).
Engine Oil – 6.4L Engine	For best performance and maximum protection under all types of operating conditions, the manufacturer only recommends full synthetic engine oils that meet the American Petroleum Institute (API) categories of SN. The manufacturer recommends the use of Pennzoil Ultra 0W-40 or equivalent Mopar engine oil meeting the requirements of FCA Material Standard MS-12633 for use in all operating temperatures.
Engine Oil Filter – 6.4L Engine	We recommend you use Mopar Engine Oil Filters.
Spark Plugs – 6.4L Engine	We recommend you use Mopar Spark Plugs.
Fuel Selection – 6.4L Engine	89 Octane Recommended - 87 Octane Acceptable, 0-15% Ethanol.



**CAUTION!**

- Mixing of engine coolant (antifreeze) other than specified Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant (antifreeze), may result in engine damage and may decrease corrosion protection. Organic Additive Technology (OAT) engine coolant is different and should not be mixed with Hybrid Organic Additive Technology (HOAT) engine coolant (antifreeze) or any “globally compatible” coolant (antifreeze). If a non-OAT engine coolant (antifreeze) is introduced into the cooling system in an emergency, the cooling system will need to be drained, flushed, and refilled with fresh OAT coolant (conforming to MS.90032), by an authorized dealer as soon as possible.
- Do not use water alone or alcohol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) products. Do not use additional rust inhibitors or anti-rust products, as they may not be compatible with the radiator engine coolant and may plug the radiator.

*(Continued)*

**CAUTION! (Continued)**

- This vehicle has not been designed for use with propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze). Use of propylene glycol-based engine coolant (antifreeze) is not recommended.

## Chassis

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Automatic Transmission – Eight-Speed Automatic	Use only Mopar ZF 8&9 Speed ATF Automatic Transmission Fluid, or equivalent. Failure to use the correct fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.
Automatic Transmission – Six-Speed Automatic with Gasoline Engine	Use only Mopar ASRC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent. Failure to use the proper fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.
Transfer Case	We recommend you use Mopar Transfer Case Lubricant for Borg Warner 44-44 and 44-45.
Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)	We recommend you use SAE 75W-85 HD Ram GL-5 Synthetic Axle Lubricant. Limited slip additive is required for limited slip axles
Brake Master Cylinder	We recommend you use Mopar DOT 3 and SAE J1703.
Power Steering Reservoir	We recommend you use Mopar Power Steering Fluid +4, Mopar ATF+4 Automatic Transmission Fluid.



## FLUIDS AND LUBRICANTS – 6.7L DIESEL ENGINES

### Engine

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Engine Coolant	We recommend you use Mopar Antifreeze/Coolant 10 Year/150,000 Mile Formula OAT (Organic Additive Technology).
Engine Oil	<p>In ambient temperatures above 0°F (-18°C), we recommend you use 10W-30 engine oil such as Mopar, Shell Rotella and Shell Rimula that meets FCA Material Standard MS-10902 and the API CK-4 engine oil category is required. Products meeting Cummins CES 20081 may also be used. The identification of these engine oils is typically located on the back of the oil container.</p> <p>In ambient temperatures below 0°F (-18°C), we recommend you use 5W-40 <b>synthetic</b> engine oil such as Mopar, Shell Rotella and Shell Rimula that meets FCA Material Standard MS-10902 and the API CK-4 engine oil category is required.</p>
Engine Oil Filter	We recommend you use Mopar Engine Oil Filters.
Fuel Filters	We recommend you use Mopar Fuel Filter. Must meet 3 micron rating. <b>Using a fuel filter that does not meet the manufacturers filtration and water separating requirements can severely impact fuel system life and reliability.</b>

Component	Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part
Crankcase Ventilation Filter	We recommend you use Mopar CCV Filter.
Fuel Selection	<p>Use good quality diesel fuel from a reputable supplier in your vehicle. Federal law requires that you must fuel this vehicle with Ultra Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (15 ppm Sulfur maximum) and prohibits the use of Low Sulfur Highway Diesel fuel (500 ppm Sulfur maximum) to avoid damage to the emissions control system. For most year-round service, No. 2 diesel fuel meeting ASTM specification D-975 Grade S15 will provide good performance.</p> <p>If climatized or diesel Number 1 ULSD fuel is not available, and you are operating below (20°F/-6°C), in sustained arctic conditions, Mopar Premium Diesel Fuel Treatment (or equivalent) is recommended to avoid gelling.</p> <p><b>This vehicle is fully compatible with biodiesel blends up to 5% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-975.</b> Pickup models, and Chassis Cab models configured with optional B20 capability, are additionally compatible with 20% biodiesel meeting ASTM specification D-7467.</p>
Diesel Exhaust Fluid	Mopar Diesel Exhaust Fluid (API Certified) (DEF) or equivalent that has been API Certified to the ISO 22241 standard. Use of fluids not API Certified to ISO 22241 may result in system damage. You can receive assistance in locating DEF in the United States by calling 866-RAM-INFO (866-726-4636). In Canada call 1-800-465-2001 (English) or 1-800-387-9983 (French).



**Chassis**

<b>Component</b>	<b>Fluid, Lubricant, or Genuine Part</b>
Automatic Transmission – 6.7L Diesel with (Six-Speed AS69RC) – Pickup models with PTO and All Chassis Cab models	Only use Mopar ASRC Automatic Transmission Fluid or equivalent. Failure to use the proper fluid may affect the function or performance of your transmission.
Transfer Case	We recommend you use Mopar BW44-44 Transfer Case Fluid.
Front and Rear Axle Fluid (2500/3500)	We recommend you use SAE 75W-85 HD Ram GL-5 Synthetic Axle Lubricant in 9.25 Front & 11.5 Rear Axles. Use Mopar Synthetic Gear Lubricant SAE 75W-140 (MS-8985) in 12.0 Rear axles. Limited slip additive is required for limited slip axles.
Front and Rear Axle Fluid (4500/5500)	We recommend you use SAE 75W-85 HD Ram GL-5 Synthetic Axle Lubricant. Limited slip additive is required for limited slip axles.

# MOPAR ACCESSORIES

## Authentic Accessories By Mopar

□ In choosing Authentic Accessories you gain far more than expressive style, premium protection, or extreme entertainment, you also benefit from enhancing your vehicle with accessories that have been thoroughly tested and factory-approved.

### EXTERIOR:

- Tubular Side Steps
- Running Boards

### INTERIOR:

- Premium Carpet Mats
- DOT Certified Emergency Kit

### ELECTRONICS:

- Trailer Brake Module
- Electronic Vehicle Tracking

□ The following highlights just some of the many Authentic Ram Accessories by Mopar featuring a fit, finish, and functionality specifically for your Ram.

□ For the full line of Authentic Ram Accessories by Mopar, visit your local dealership or online at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) for U.S. residents and [mopar.ca](http://mopar.ca) for Canadian residents.

- Stirrup Step
- Bodyside Moldings

- Door Sill Guards
- Slush Mats

- Wireless Charging Pad

### NOTE:

All parts are subject to availability.

- Front Air Deflectors
- Side Window Deflectors

- Leather Seats

- Remote Start



## CYBERSECURITY

Your vehicle may be a connected vehicle and may be equipped with both wired and wireless networks. These networks allow your vehicle to send and receive information. This information allows systems and features in your vehicle to function properly.

Your vehicle may be equipped with certain security features to reduce the risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to vehicle systems and wireless communications. Vehicle software technology continues to evolve over time and FCA US LLC, working with its suppliers, evaluates and takes appropriate steps as needed. Similar to a computer or other devices, your vehicle may require software updates to improve the usability and performance of your systems or to reduce the potential risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems.

The risk of unauthorized and unlawful access to your vehicle systems may still exist, even if the most recent version of vehicle software (such as Uconnect software) is installed.



### WARNING!

- It is not possible to know or to predict all of the possible outcomes if your vehicle's systems are breached. It may be possible that vehicle systems, including safety related systems, could be impaired or a loss of vehicle control could occur that may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.
- ONLY insert media (e.g., USB, SD card, or CD) into your vehicle if it came from a trusted source. Media of unknown origin could possibly contain malicious software, and if installed in your vehicle, it may increase the possibility for vehicle systems to be breached.
- As always, if you experience unusual vehicle behavior, take your vehicle to your nearest authorized dealer immediately.

### NOTE:

- FCA US LLC or your dealer may contact you directly regarding software updates.
- To help further improve vehicle security and minimize the potential risk of a security breach, vehicle owners should:
  - Routinely check [www.driveuconnect.com](http://www.driveuconnect.com) (US Residents) or [www.driveuconnect.ca](http://www.driveuconnect.ca) (Canadian Residents) to learn about available Uconnect software updates.
  - Only connect and use trusted media devices (e.g. personal mobile phones, USBs, CDs).

Privacy of any wireless and wired communications cannot be assured. Third parties may unlawfully intercept information and private communications without your consent. For further information, refer to "Data Collection & Privacy" in your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement or "Onboard Diagnostic System (OBD II) Cybersecurity" in "Getting To Know Your Instrument Panel" in your Owner's Manual.

## UCONNECT 3.0



**Uconnect 3.0 Radio**

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| 1 — RADIO Button                           | 9 — MENU Button                  |
| 2 — PHONE Pick-Up Button                   | 10 — INFO Button                 |
| 3 — Phone Hang-Up Button                   | 11 — SEEK Down Button            |
| 4 — A-B-C Button                           | 12 — ON/OFF Button — VOLUME Knob |
| 5 — BROWSE/ENTER Button — TUNE/SCROLL Knob | 13 — Preset Buttons              |
| 6 — SEEK Up Button                         | 14 — MEDIA Button                |
| 7 — Play/Pause — MUTE Button               |                                  |
| 8 — BACK Button                            |                                  |



## Clock Setting

1. Push the MENU button at the bottom of the radio, and push the ENTER/BROWSE button for System Settings. Next, select the Time and Format setting and then select Set Time by pushing the ENTER/BROWSE button.
2. Adjust the hours or minutes by turning the TUNE/SCROLL knob, then pushing the ENTER/BROWSE button to move to the next entry. You can also select 12hr or 24hr format by turning the TUNE/SCROLL knob, then pushing the ENTER/BROWSE button on the desired selection.
3. Once the time is set, press the "BACK" button to exit the time screen.

## Audio Setting

- Push the AUDIO button on the radio faceplate.
- The Audio Menu shows the following options for you to customize your audio settings.

## Treble, Mid, Bass, Fade, Balance, Speed Adjusted Volume, Loudness and AUX Offset

- Select the desired setting to adjust, then push the ENTER/BROWSE button. Turn the TUNE/SCROLL knob to adjust the setting + or - . Push the "BACK" button when done.

## Radio Operation

### Seek Up/Down Buttons

- Push the up or down button to seek through radio stations in AM, FM or SXM bands.
- Hold either button to bypass stations without stopping.

### Store Radio Presets Manually

The presets are available for all Radio Modes, and are activated by pushing any of the six preset buttons. The Radio stores up to 18 presets in each of the Radio modes. Push the A-B-C button on the faceplate to select the A, B, or C preset list.

To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Push and hold the desired numbered button for more than two seconds, or until you hear a confirmation beep.

## Disc Operation — If Equipped

Your vehicle may have a remote CD player located in the lower center console storage bin, or in the lower center bench seat bin. CD/Disc Mode is entered by either inserting a CD/Disc or by pushing the MEDIA button located on the side of the display. Once in Media Mode, select "Disc." Gently insert one CD into the CD player with the CD label facing as indicated on the illustration located on the Disc player.

### Seek Up/Down Buttons

- Push to seek through CD tracks.
- Hold either button to bypass tracks without stopping.

## USB/Audio Jack (AUX) Manual Operation

To select a specific audio source, push the MEDIA button on the faceplate and select from the following modes:

### USB/iPod

- USB/iPod Mode is entered by either inserting a USB Jump Drive or iPod cable into the USB port or by pushing the MEDIA button located left of the display.

## Audio Jack (AUX)

- The AUX allows a device such as an MP3 player or an iPod to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's audio system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle's speakers.
- The functions of the device are controlled using the device buttons, not the buttons on the radio. The volume may be controlled using the radio or the device.



## UCONNECT 3 WITH 5-INCH DISPLAY – IF EQUIPPED

### Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display At A Glance



**Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio Buttons**

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 — RADIO Button                           | 7 — MUTE Button                         |
| 2 — COMPASS Button                         | 8 — System On/Off — VOLUME Control Knob |
| 3 — SETTINGS Button                        | 9 — Uconnect PHONE Button               |
| 4 — MORE Functions Button                  | 10 — MEDIA Button                       |
| 5 — BROWSE/ENTER Button — TUNE/SCROLL Knob |   |
| 6 — SCREEN OFF Button                      |   |



## CAUTION!

**Do NOT attach any object to the touchscreen, doing so can result in damage to the touchscreen.**

### Clock Setting

To start the clock setting procedure:

1. Press the “Settings” button on the faceplate, then press the “Clock and Date” button.
2. Press the “Set Time” button on the touchscreen.
3. Press the “Up” or “Down” arrows to adjust the hours or minutes, then select the “AM” or “PM” button on the touchscreen. You can also select 12hr or 24hr format by pressing the desired button on the touchscreen.
4. Once the time is set, press the “Done” button on the touchscreen to exit the time screen.

#### NOTE:

In the Clock Setting Menu you can also select “Display Clock”. Display Clock turns the clock display in the status bar on or off.

### Audio Setting

1. Press the “Settings” button on the faceplate.
2. Scroll down and press the “Audio” button on the touchscreen to open the Audio menu.
3. The Audio Menu shows the following options for you to customize your audio settings.

#### Equalizer

Press the “Equalizer” button on the touchscreen to adjust the Bass, Mid and Treble. Use the “+” or “-” button on the touchscreen to adjust the equalizer to your desired settings.

#### Balance/Fade

Press the “Balance/Fade” button on the touchscreen to adjust the sound from the speakers. Use the arrow buttons on the touchscreen to adjust the sound level from the front and rear or right and left side speakers. Press the center “C” button on the touchscreen to reset the balance and fade to the factory setting.

### Speed Adjusted Volume — If Equipped

Press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen to select between OFF, 1, 2 or 3. This will decrease the radio volume relative to a decrease in vehicle speed.

#### Loudness — If Equipped

Press the “Loudness” button on the touchscreen to select the Loudness feature. When this feature is activated it improves sound quality at lower volumes.

#### Surround Sound — If Equipped

Press the “Surround Sound” button on the touchscreen, select “On” or “Off” followed by pressing the back arrow button on the touchscreen. When this feature is activated, it provides simulated surround sound mode.

### Radio Operation

#### Store Radio Presets Manually

The Radio stores up to 12 presets in each of the Radio modes. There are four visible presets at the top of the radio screen. Pressing the “All” button on the touchscreen on the radio home screen displays all of the preset stations for that mode.



To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the desired numbered button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds, or until you hear a confirmation beep.

#### Seek Next/Previous Buttons

- Press the Seek Next or Seek Previous button to seek through radio stations in AM, FM or SXM bands.
- Hold either button to bypass stations without stopping.

#### USB/Audio Jack (AUX)/Bluetooth Operation

##### USB/AUX

The USB/AUX Jack is located on the Instrument Panel, near the HVAC controls.

- USB/iPod Mode is entered by either inserting a USB Jump Drive or an iPod cable into the USB port or by pushing the MEDIA button on the faceplate located below the display. Once in Media Mode, press the "Source" button on the touchscreen and select USB/iPod.

#### NOTE:

The USB source will say "iPod" only when an apple product is connected to the USB port.

- Push the MEDIA button on the faceplate, press the "Source" button on the touchscreen then select USB/iPod to change the mode to the USB device. If the device is connected, music from your portable device will play through the vehicle's speakers.

#### Audio Jack (AUX)

The AUX jack allows a portable device, such as an MP3 player or an iPod, to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's audio system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

- Push the MEDIA button on the faceplate, press the "Source" button on the touchscreen then select "AUX" to change the mode to AUX.
- The functions of the portable device are controlled using the device. However, the volume may be controlled using the radio or portable device.

#### Bluetooth

If using a Bluetooth - equipped device, you may also be able to stream music to your vehicle's sound system.

Push the MEDIA button on the faceplate, press the "Source" button on the touchscreen then select "Bluetooth" to change the mode to Bluetooth. If the device is paired, music from your portable device will play through the vehicle's speakers.

#### NOTE:

If changing the name of the device within the Bluetooth settings of your device (where applicable), and the device is connected to the vehicle Bluetooth system, the system may change the current playing track.

#### Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Available Media Hubs

Uconnect 3	Media Hub (USB, AUX Ports)	Remote USB Port (Fully Functional)
	S	O


S = Standard Equipment

O = Optional Equipment

## Voice Text Reply (Not Compatible With iPhone)

Once your Uconnect system is paired with a compatible mobile device, the system can announce a new incoming text message, and read it to you over the vehicle audio system. You can reply to the message using Voice Recognition by selecting, or saying, one of the 18 pre-defined messages.

### Here's How:

1. Push the Voice Recognition (VR)  or the Phone button and wait for the beep, then say “reply.” Uconnect gives the following prompt: “Please say the message you would like to send.”
2. Wait for the beep and say one of the pre-defined messages. (If you are not sure, you can say “help”). Uconnect will then read the pre-defined messages allowed.
3. As soon as you hear the message you would like to send, you can interrupt the list of prompts by pushing the Uconnect phone button and saying the phrase. Uconnect will confirm the message by reading it back to you.

4. Push the Phone button and say “Send.”

PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES		
Yes.	Stuck in traffic.	See you later.
No.	Start without me.	I'll be late.
Okay.	Where are you?	I will be <5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 45, 60>* minutes late.
Call me.	Are you there yet?	
I'll call you later.	I need directions.	See you in <5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 45, 60>* minutes.
I'm on my way.	Can't talk right now.	Thanks.
I'm lost.		

\*Use only the numbering listed or the system may not transcribe the message properly.

## Siri Eyes Free — If Equipped

Siri lets you use your voice to send text messages, select media, place phone calls and much more. Siri uses natural language to understand what you mean and responds back to confirm your requests. The system is designed to keep your eyes on the road and your hands on the wheel by letting Siri help you perform useful tasks.

To enable Siri, push and hold, then release the Uconnect Voice Recognition (VR) button on the steering wheel. After you hear a double beep you can ask Siri to play podcasts and music, get directions, read text messages and many other useful requests.



## UCONNECT 4C NAV WITH 12-INCH DISPLAY

### Uconnect 4C NAV At A Glance



Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Radio Screen



#### WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features, SiriusXM Guardian services, and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.



#### CAUTION!

Do NOT attach any object to the touchscreen, doing so can result in damage to the screen.

#### NOTE:

Uconnect screen images are for illustration purposes only and may not reflect exact software for your vehicle.

#### Setting The Time

- Model 4C NAV synchronizes time automatically via GPS, so it should not require any time adjustment. If you do need to set the time manually, follow the instructions below for Model 4C NAV.
- For Model 4C, turn the unit on, and then press the time display at the top of the screen. Press “Yes.”
- If the time is not displayed at the top of the screen, press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen. In the Settings screen, press the “Clock” button on the touchscreen, then check or uncheck this option.
- Press “+” or “-” next to Set Time Hours and Set Time Minutes to adjust the time.
- If these features are not available, uncheck the Sync Time box.
- Press “X” to save your settings and exit out of the Clock Setting screen.

## Background Themes

- Screen background themes are selectable from a pre-loaded list of themes. If you'd like to set a theme, follow the instructions below.
- Press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen.
- Press the “Display” button on the touchscreen.
- Then press “Set Theme” button on the touchscreen and select a theme.

## Audio Settings

- Press of the “Audio” button on the touchscreen to activate the Audio settings screen to adjust Balance\Fade, Equalizer, and Speed Adjusted Volume.
- You can return to the Radio screen by pressing the “X” located at the top right.

## Balance/Fade

- Press the “Balance/Fade” button on the touchscreen to Balance audio between the front speakers or fade the audio between the rear and front speakers.
- Pressing the “Front,” “Rear,” “Left,” or “Right” buttons on the touchscreen or press and drag the Speaker Icon to adjust the Balance/Fade.

## Equalizer

- Press the “Equalizer” button on the touchscreen to activate the Equalizer screen.
- Press the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen, or press and drag over the level bar for each of the equalizer bands. The level value, which spans between plus or minus nine, is displayed at the bottom of each of the Bands.

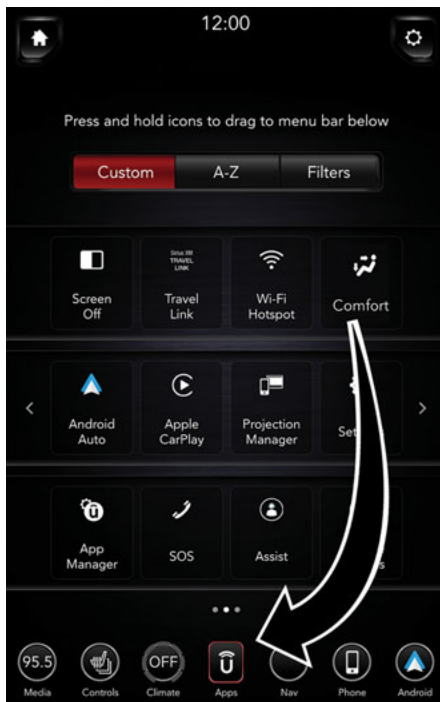
## Speed Adjusted Volume

- Press the “Speed Adjusted Volume” button on the touchscreen to activate the Speed Adjusted Volume screen. The Speed Adjusted Volume is adjusted by pressing the volume level indicator. This alters the automatic adjustment of the audio volume with variation to vehicle speed.



## Drag & Drop Menu Bar

The Uconnect features and services in the main menu bar are easily changed for your convenience. Simply follow these steps:



**Uconnect 4C NAV Main Menu**

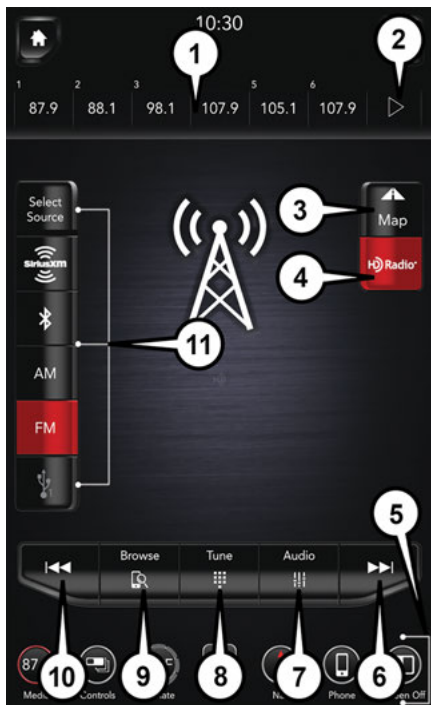
1. Press the “Apps 
  2. Press and hold, then drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

The new app shortcut, that was dragged down onto the main menu bar, will now be an active App/shortcut.

### **NOTE:**

This feature is only available if the vehicle is in PARK.

## Radio



Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Radio

- 1 — Radio Station Presets
- 2 — Toggle Between Presets
- 3 — View Small Navigation Map
- 4 — HD Radio
- 5 — Main Category Bar
- 6 — Seek Up
- 7 — Audio Settings
- 8 — Direct Tune To A Radio Station
- 9 — Browse And Manage Presets
- 10 — Seek Down
- 11 — Radio Bands



### WARNING!

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features, SiriusXM Guardian services, and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

- To access the Radio mode, press the “Radio” button on the touchscreen.

## Selecting Radio Stations

- Press the desired radio band (AM, FM or SXM) button on the touchscreen.

## Seek Up/Seek Down

- Press the Seek up or down arrow buttons on the touchscreen for less than two seconds to seek through radio stations.
- Press and hold either arrow button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds to bypass stations without stopping. The radio will stop at the next listenable station once the arrow button on the touchscreen is released.

## Direct Tune

- Tune directly to a radio station by pressing the “Tune” button on the screen, and entering the desired station number.

## Store Radio Presets Manually

Your radio can store 36 total preset stations, 12 presets per band (AM, FM and SXM). They are shown at the top of your radio screen. To see the 12 preset stations per band, press the arrow button on the touchscreen at the top right of the screen to toggle between the two sets of six presets.



To store a radio preset manually, follow the steps below:

1. Tune to the desired station.
2. Press and hold the desired numbered button on the touchscreen for more than two seconds or until you hear a confirmation beep.

### HD Radio — If Equipped

- HD Radio operates similar to conventional radio except it allows broadcasters to transmit a high-quality digital signal.
- With an HD radio receiver, the listener is provided with a clear sound that enhances the listening experience. HD radio can also transmit data such as song title or artist.

### Android Auto — If Equipped

#### NOTE:

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Android Auto features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

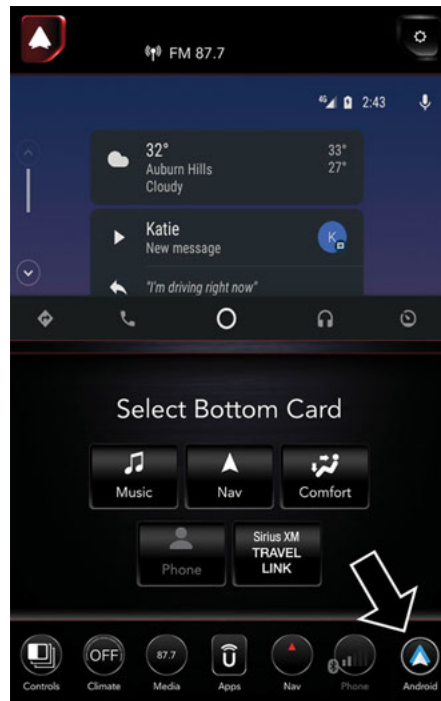
Android Auto is a feature of your Uconnect system, and your Android 5.0 Lollipop, or higher, powered smartphone with a data

plan, that allows you to project your smartphone and a number of its apps onto the touchscreen radio display. Android Auto automatically brings you useful information, and organizes it into simple cards that appear just when they are needed. Android Auto can be used with Google's best-in-class speech technology, the steering wheel controls, the knobs and buttons on your radio faceplate, and the radio display's touchscreen to control many of your apps. To use Android Auto follow the following procedure:

1. Download the Android Auto app from the Google Play store on your Android-powered smartphone.
2. Connect your Android powered smartphone to one of the media USB ports in your vehicle. If the Android Auto app was not downloaded, the first time you plug your device in, the app will begin to download.

#### NOTE:

Be sure to use the factory-provided USB cable that came with your phone, as after-market cables may not work.



**Uconnect 4C With 12-inch Display Android Auto**

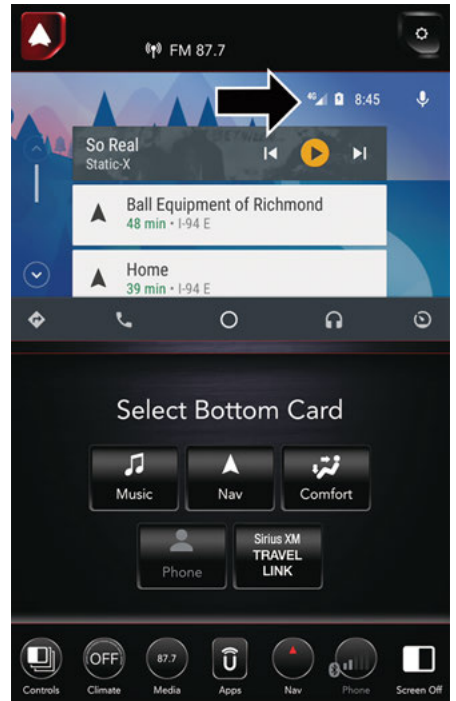
3. Once the device is connected, the system displays the Android Auto home screen. Android Auto should launch, but if not, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for the procedure to enable the feature "AutoShow." You can also launch it by pressing Android Auto located in the "Apps" menu. If you use Android Auto frequently you can move the app to the menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen. Press the "Apps" button and locate the Android Auto app; then press and drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

Once Android Auto is up and running on your Uconnect system, the following features can be utilized using your smartphone's data plan:

- Google Maps for navigation
- Google Play Music, Spotify, iHeart Radio, etc. for music
- Handsfree Calling, and Texting for communication
- Hundred of compatible apps

**NOTE:**

To use Android Auto, make sure you are in an area with cellular coverage. Android Auto may use cellular data and your cellular coverage is shown in the upper right corner of the radio screen.



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12–inch Display Google Maps Data And Cellular Coverage**



**NOTE:**

Requires compatible smartphone running Android 5.0 Lollipop or higher and download app on Google Play. Android, Android Auto and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc.

**Maps**

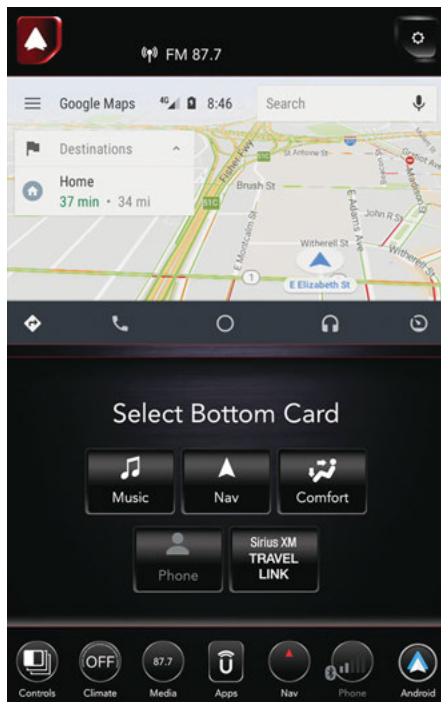
Push and hold the VR button on the steering wheel or tap the microphone icon to ask Google to take you to a desired destination by voice. You can also touch the Navigation icon in Android Auto to access Google Maps.

**NOTE:**

If the VR button is not held, and is only pushed, the built-in Uconnect VR prompts you and any navigation command said launches the built-in Uconnect navigation system.

While using Android Auto, Google Maps provides voice-guided:

- Navigation
- Live traffic information
- Lane guidance



**Google Maps**

**NOTE:**

If you are using the built-in Uconnect navigation system, and you try and start a new route using the Android Auto, via voice or any other method, a pop-up appears asking if you would like to switch from Uconnect navigation to smartphone navigation. A pop-up also appears, asking if you'd like to switch, if Android Auto is currently in use and you attempt to launch a built-in Uconnect route. Selecting "Yes" switches the navigation type to the newly used method of navigation and a route will be planned for the new destination. If "No" is selected the navigation type remains unchanged.

For further information, refer to [www.android.com/auto/](http://www.android.com/auto/).

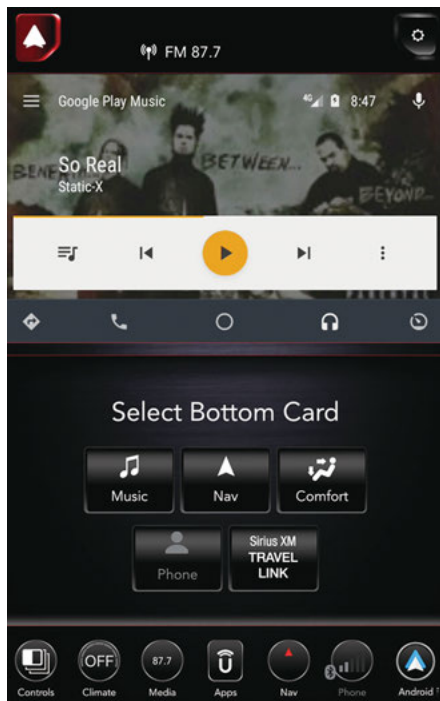
For further information on the navigation function, please refer to <https://support.google.com/android> or <https://support.google.com/androidauto/>.

## Music

Android Auto allows you to access and stream your favorite music with apps like Google Play Music, iHeartRadio, and Spotify. Using your smartphone's data plan, you can stream endless music on the road.

### NOTE:

For Music apps, playlists, and stations to function on your smartphone, it must be set up prior to using Android Auto.



Android Auto Music

### NOTE:

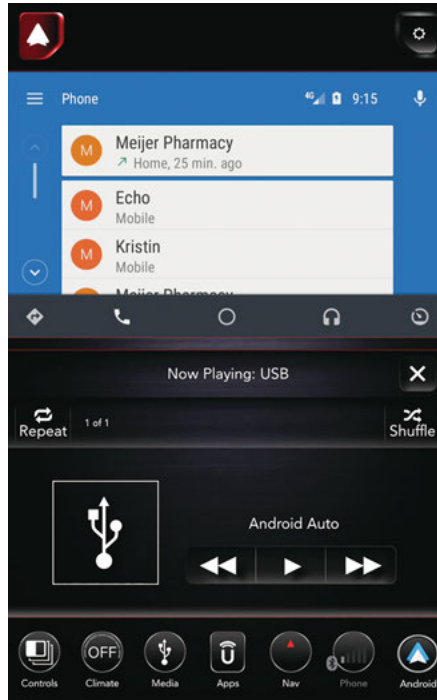
To see the metadata for the music playing through Android Auto, select the Uconnect System's media screen.

For further information refer to <https://support.google.com/androidauto>.

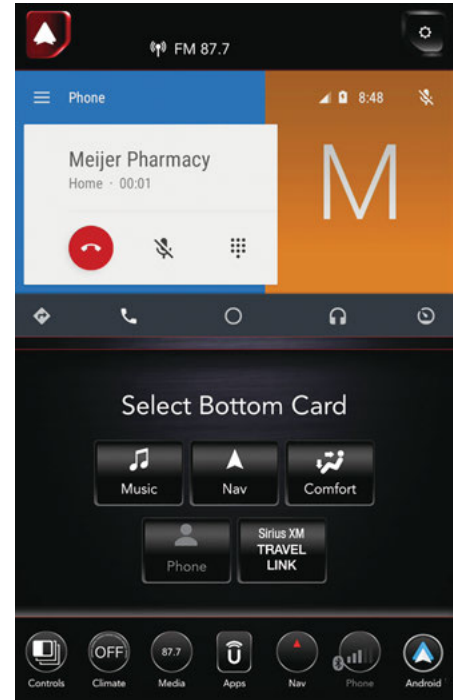


## Communication

With Android Auto connected, press and hold the VR button on the steering wheel to activate voice recognition specific to the Android Auto. This will allow you to send and reply to text messages, have incoming text messages read out loud, and place and receive hands-free calls.



Android Auto Contact



Android Auto Phone

## Apps

The Android Auto App will display all the compatible apps that are available to use with Android Auto, every time it is launched. You must have the compatible app downloaded, and you must be signed in to the app for it to work with Android Auto. Refer to [g.co/androidauto](http://g.co/androidauto) to see the latest list of available apps for Android Auto.

## Apple CarPlay Integration – If Equipped

### NOTE:

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Apple CarPlay features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

Uconnect works seamlessly with Apple CarPlay, the smarter, more secure way to use your iPhone in the car, and stay focused on the road. Use your Uconnect Touchscreen display, the vehicle's knobs and controls, and your voice with Siri to get access to Apple Music, Maps, Messages, and more.

To use CarPlay, make sure you are using iPhone 5 or later, have Siri enabled in Settings, ensure your iPhone is unlocked for

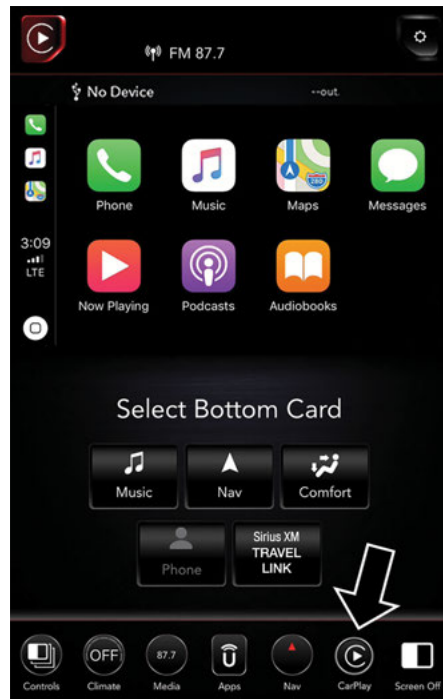
the very first connection only, and then use the following procedure:

1. Connect your iPhone to one of the media USB ports in your vehicle.

### NOTE:

Be sure to use the factory-provided Lightning cable that came with your phone, as after-market cables may not work.

2. Once the device is connected, the system displays the CarPlay home screen. Apple CarPlay should launch, but if not, refer to the Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for the procedure to enable the feature "AutoShow." You can also launch it by pressing the CarPlay located in the "Apps" menu. If you use Apple CarPlay frequently you can move the app to the menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen. Press the "Apps" button and locate the CarPlay app; then press and drag the selected App to replace an existing shortcut in the main menu bar.

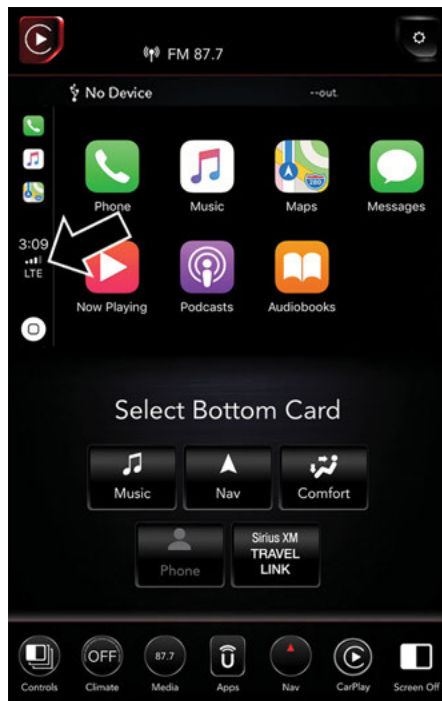


Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display  
CarPlay

Once CarPlay is up and running on your Uconnect system, the following features can be utilized using your iPhone's data plan:

- Phone
- Music
- Messages
- Maps

**NOTE:** To use CarPlay make sure that cellular data is turned on, and that you are in an area with cellular coverage. Your data and cellular coverage is shown on the left side of the radio screen.



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display CarPlay Data And Cellular Coverage**

#### **NOTE:**

Requires compatible iPhone. See dealer for phone compatibility. Data plan rates apply. Vehicle user interface is a product of Apple. Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Apple terms of use and privacy statements apply.

#### **Phone**

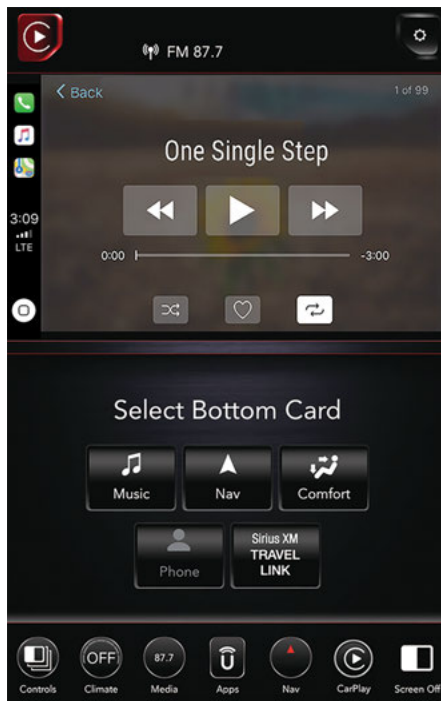
With CarPlay, press and hold the VR button on the steering wheel to activate a Siri voice recognition session. You can also press and hold the Home button within CarPlay to start talking to Siri. This allows you to make calls or listen to voice mail as you normally would using Siri on your iPhone.

#### **NOTE:**

Only temporarily pushing the VR button on the steering wheel launches a built-in VR session, not a Siri session, and it will not function with CarPlay.

## Music

CarPlay allows you to access all your artists, playlists, and music from iTunes. Using your iPhone's data plan, you can also use select third party audio apps including music, news, sports, podcasts and more.



Apple Music

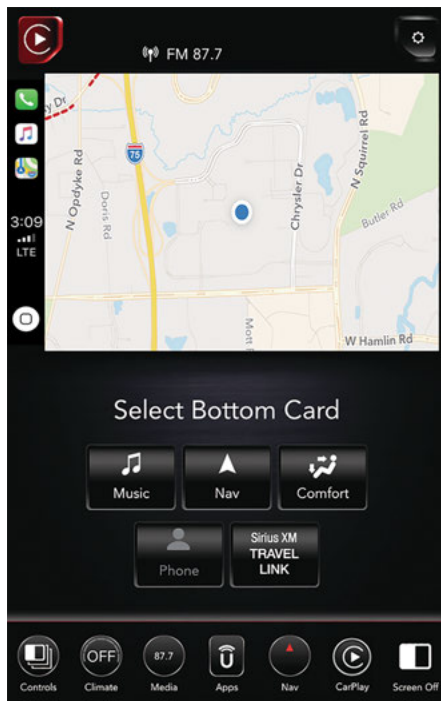
## Messages

Just like Phone, CarPlay allows you to use Siri to send or reply to text messages. Siri can also read incoming text messages, but driver's will not be able to read messages, as everything is done via voice.



## Maps

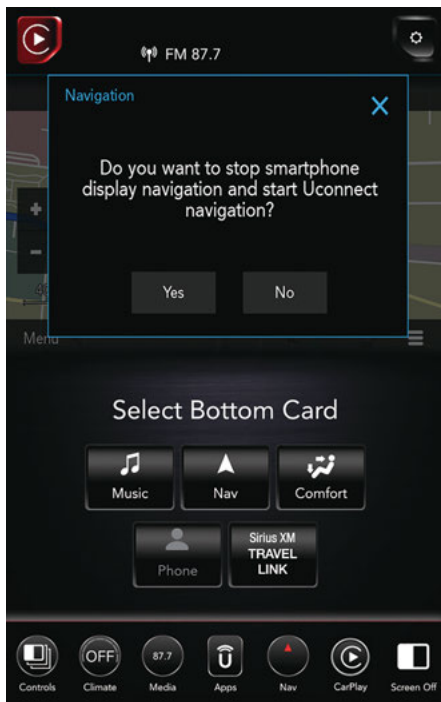
To use your Apple Maps for navigation on your Uconnect system, launch CarPlay, and push and hold the VR button on the steering wheel to use Siri to set your desired destination. Alternatively, choose a nearby destination by pressing Destinations and selecting a category, by launching Siri from the destinations page, or even by typing in a destination.



Maps

## NOTE:

- If the VR button is not held, and is only pushed, the built-in Uconnect VR prompts you and any navigation command said launches the built-in Uconnect navigation system.
- If you are using the built-in Uconnect navigation system, and you try and start a new route using CarPlay, via voice or any other method, a pop-up appears asking if you would like to switch from Uconnect navigation to iPhone navigation. A pop-up also appears, asking if you'd like to switch, if an CarPlay navigation is currently in use and you attempt to launch a built-in Uconnect route. Selecting "Yes" switches the navigation type to the newly used method of navigation and a route will be planned for the new destination. If "No" is selected the navigation type remains unchanged.



**Navigation Pop-Up**

## Apps

To use a compatible app with CarPlay, you must have the compatible app downloaded, and you must be signed in to the app. Refer to <http://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/> (U.S. Residents) or <https://www.apple.com/ca> (Canadian Residents) to see the latest list of available apps for CarPlay.

## UCONNECT SETTINGS

The Uconnect system allows you to access Customer Programmable feature settings such as Language, Display, Units, Voice, Clock, Safety & Driving Assistance, Lights, Doors & Locks, Auto-On Comfort, Engine Off Options, Audio, Phone/Bluetooth, SiriusXM Setup, Restore Settings, Clear Personal Data, and System Information through buttons on the touchscreen.

Push the SETTINGS button (Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display), or press the “Apps” button (on the Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display or the Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display) located near the bottom of the touchscreen, then press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen to access the Settings screen. When making a selection, scroll up or down until the

preferred setting is highlighted, then press the preferred setting until a check-mark appears next to the setting, showing that setting has been selected. The following feature settings are available:

- Language — If Equipped
- Display
- Units
- Voice
- Clock
- Safety & Driving Assistance
- Mirrors And Wipers — If Equipped
- Brakes
- Lights
- Doors & Locks
- Power Side Steps — If Equipped
- Auto-On Comfort & Remote Start — If Equipped
- Engine Off Options
- Suspension
- Trailer Brake
- Audio
- Phone/Bluetooth
- SiriusXM Setup
- Restore Settings
- Clear Personal Data
- System Information



**NOTE:**

Depending on the vehicles options, feature settings may vary.

Refer to “Uconnect Settings” in “Multi-media” in the Owner’s Manual for further information.

## TIPS CONTROLS AND GENERAL INFORMATION

### Steering Wheel Audio Controls

The steering wheel audio controls are located on the rear surface of the steering wheel.



**Steering Wheel Audio Controls**

### Left Switch

- Push the switch up or down to search for the next listenable station.
- Push the button in the center to select the next preset radio station.

### Right Switch

- Push the switch up or down to increase or decrease the volume.
- Push the button in the center to change modes AM/FM/SXM.

### Reception Conditions

Reception conditions change constantly while driving. Reception may be interfered with by the presence of mountains, buildings or bridges, especially when you are far away from the broadcaster.

The volume may be increased when receiving traffic alerts and news.

### Care And Maintenance

Observe the following precautions to ensure the system is fully operational:

- The display lens should not come into contact with pointed or rigid objects which could damage its surface; use a soft, dry, anti-static cloth to clean and do not press.
- Never use alcohol, gas and derivatives to clean the display lens.
- Prevent any liquid from entering the system: this could damage it beyond repair.

### Anti-Theft Protection

The system is equipped with an anti-theft protection system based on the exchange of information with the electronic control unit (Body Computer) on the vehicle. This guarantees maximum safety.

If the check has a positive outcome, the system will start to operate. See an authorized dealer for further information.

# SIRIUSXM GUARDIAN – IF EQUIPPED

## SiriusXM Guardian – If Equipped (Available on Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch or 12-inch Display)



### WARNING!

ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the steering wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the features and applications in this vehicle. Only use the features and applications when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

### NOTE:

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

SiriusXM Guardian enhances your ownership and driving experience. When connected to an operable network, you can:

- Place a SOS Call to a SiriusXM Guardian operator who can connect you to emergency responders.

- Remotely lock/unlock your doors and start your vehicle from virtually anywhere, using the Uconnect App from your device. You can also do so by logging into your owner site, or by calling SiriusXM Guardian Care when your vehicle has an operable network connection. Services can only be used where coverage is available.


- Receive text or email notifications if your vehicle's security alarm goes off.

- Receive stolen vehicle assistance, using GPS technology to help authorities locate your vehicle if it is stolen.

- Get operator assistance using the ASSIST button on your interior rearview mirror.

### Before you drive, familiarize yourself with the easy-to-use SiriusXM Guardian services.

1. The ASSIST and SOS Call buttons are located on your rearview mirror. The ASSIST button is used for contacting Roadside Assistance, Vehicle Care, SiriusXM Guardian Care, and Uconnect Care. The SOS Call button connects you to a SiriusXM Guardian Care Agent, who can connect you to emergency services.

2. The Uconnect “Apps ” button is located in the center of the menu bar of the radio touchscreen. This is where you can manage your Apps.

3. The Uconnect Voice Command and Uconnect Phone buttons are located on the left side of your steering wheel. These buttons let you use your voice to give commands, make phone calls, send and receive text messages,, enter navigation destinations, and control your radio and media devices.

### Included Trial Period For New Vehicles

Your new vehicle may come with an included trial period for use of the SiriusXM Guardian services starting at the date of vehicle purchase (date based on vehicle sales notification from your dealer). **To activate the trial, you must first register with SiriusXM Guardian.** After the trial period, if you wish to continue your SiriusXM Guardian services you can choose to purchase a subscription.



## SiriusXM Guardian Activation

To unlock the full potential of SiriusXM Guardian in your vehicle, you must activate your SiriusXM Guardian services.

1. Press the Apps icon on the bottom of your in-vehicle touchscreen.
2. Select the Activate Services icon from your list of apps.
3. Select “Customer Care” to speak with a SiriusXM Guardian Customer Care agent who will activate services in your vehicle, or select “Enter Email” to activate on the web.

**Why sign up for SiriusXM Guardian?** Here are just a few examples of things you’ll be able to do:

- Know that help, if you need it, is only a button press away with Assist.
- Lock and unlock your vehicle doors from hundreds of miles away.
- Find your vehicle, no matter where you parked, using the convenient Vehicle Finder function.
- Use Send & Go to send a navigation route from your mobile phone to your vehicle’s navigation system.

For further information.:

- U.S. residents visit: [www.siriusxm.com/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.com/guardian)
- Canadian residents visit: [www.siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.ca/guardian)

## Download The Uconnect App

You’re only a few steps away from using remote commands and other valuable services.



**Mobile App**

To use the Uconnect App:

- ❑ Search for and download the Uconnect App from the store on your compatible iPhone or Android powered device.
- ❑ Log in to the app using the email address and password you created when you activated the services.
- ❑ Press the “Remote” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to Lock/Unlock, Remote Start (if equipped), and activate your horn and lights remotely.
- ❑ Press the “Location” button on the bottom menu bar of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your vehicle’s navigation system.
- ❑ Press the menu button (three horizontal lines) in the upper left corner of the app to access settings and support information.

## Renewing Subscriptions (Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch or 12-inch Display)

Subscriptions can be purchased online by logging into your owner account. If you need help push the ASSIST button on the rearview mirror, then select SiriusXM Guardian Care or:

- ❑ U.S. residents dial:  
1-844-796-4827
- ❑ Canadian residents dial:1-877-324-9091


## Maintaining Your SiriusXM Guardian Account

### Selling Your Vehicle


When you sell your vehicle, we recommend that you remove your SiriusXM Guardian Account information from the vehicle. You can do this by pressing the ASSIST button in your vehicle and selecting SiriusXM Guardian, or call:

- ❑ U.S. residents:  
1-844-796-4827
- ❑ Canadian residents:1-877-324-9091

## Built-In Features

**WARNING!**

ALWAYS drive safely with your hands on the wheel. You have full responsibility and assume all risks related to the use of the Uconnect features, SiriusXM Guardian services, and applications in this vehicle. Only use Uconnect features and SiriusXM Guardian services when it is safe to do so. Failure to do so may result in an accident involving serious injury or death.

**WARNING!**

- ❑ ALWAYS obey traffic laws and pay attention to the road. Some features are limited while the vehicle is in motion. Some services, including SOS, will NOT work without a subscription and an operable network connection.
- ❑ Ignoring the rearview mirror light could mean you may not have SOS Call service if needed. If the rearview mirror light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service the SOS Call system immediately.

*(Continued)*



**WARNING! (Continued)**

- The Occupant Restraint Controller (ORC) turns on the Air Bag Warning Light on the instrument panel if a malfunction is detected in any part of the airbag system. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, the air bag system may not be working properly and the SOS Call system may not send a signal to a SOS Call operator if an air bag is deployed. If the Air Bag Warning Light is illuminated, have an authorized dealer service your vehicle immediately.
- If anyone in the vehicle could be in danger (e.g., fire or smoke is visible, dangerous road conditions or location), do not wait for voice contact from a SOS Call operator. All occupants should exit the vehicle immediately and move to a safe location.

*(Continued)***WARNING! (Continued)**

- The SOS Call system is embedded into the vehicle's electrical system. Do not add aftermarket electrical equipment to the vehicle's electrical system. This may prevent your vehicle from sending a signal to initiate an emergency call. To avoid interference that can cause the SOS Call system to fail, never add aftermarket equipment (e.g., two-way mobile radio, CB radio, data recorder, etc.) to your vehicle's electrical system or modify the antennas on your vehicle.
- IF YOUR VEHICLE LOSES BATTERY POWER FOR ANY REASON (INCLUDING DURING OR AFTER AN ACCIDENT), the Uconnect features, apps, and SiriusXM Guardian services, among others, will not operate.

**NOTE:**

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

1. **ASSIST Call (4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display and Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display)** — The overhead console contains an ASSIST button, allowing you to speak to a call center agent for support:

**Assist And SOS**

- 1 — ASSIST Button  
2 — SOS Button

- **Roadside Assistance Call** — If you get a flat tire, or need a tow, you'll be connected to someone who can help anytime. Additional fees may apply. Additional information in this section.
- **Uconnect Care** — In vehicle support for Uconnect Apps and Features.

- **SiriusXM Guardian Care** — In vehicle support for SiriusXM Guardian services.
- **Vehicle Care** — Total support for your FCA US LLC vehicle.

**NOTE:**

In order to provide SiriusXM Guardian Services to you, we may record and monitor your conversations with Roadside Assistance, Uconnect Care, SiriusXM Guardian Care, or Vehicle Care, whether such conversations are initiated through the SiriusXM Guardian services in your vehicle, your device, or via a landline device, and may share information obtained through such recording and monitoring in accordance with regulatory requirements. You acknowledge, agree, and consent to any recording, monitoring or sharing of information obtained through any such call recordings.

2. **Emergency SOS Call (If Equipped)** — The overhead console contains a SOS Call button that, when pressed, may place a call from your vehicle to a SiriusXM Guardian Care operator, who can connect you to emergency service operators, to request help from local police, fire or ambulance personnel. If this button is

accidentally pressed, you will have ten seconds to stop the call. To cancel, press the SOS Call button again or press the “Cancel” button shown on the touchscreen. After ten seconds has passed, the SOS call will be placed and only the SOS Call operator can cancel it. The LED light on the overhead console will turn green once a connection to a SOS Call operator has been made. The green LED light will turn off once the SOS Call is terminated. Have an authorized dealer service the vehicle if the overhead console light is continuously red. On equipped vehicles, this feature requires a functioning electrical system, a subscription, and an operable network connection. **If a connection is made between a SOS Call operator and your vehicle, you understand and agree that SOS Call operators will stay on the line, even after you connect with emergency services. The Emergency services operator may, like any other emergency call, record conversations and sounds in and near your vehicle upon connection.**

3. **Stolen Vehicle Assistance** — If your vehicle is stolen, contact local law enforcement immediately to file a stolen vehicle report. Once this report has been filed, SiriusXM

Guardian Care can help locate your vehicle. The SiriusXM Guardian Care agent will ask for the stolen vehicle report number issued by local law enforcement. As long as your vehicle has a SiriusXM Guardian subscription and an operable network connection, the agent may be able to locate the stolen vehicle and work with law enforcement to help recover it. Your vehicle must have an operable network connection and must be registered with SiriusXM Guardian with an active subscription that includes the applicable feature.

4. **4G Wi-Fi Hotspot — If Equipped** — Allows you and your passengers to connect their portable devices to the built-in 4G Wi-Fi capabilities of your Uconnect system. Purchasing 4G Wi-Fi Hotspot requires the use of an Internet-enabled portable device.



**NOTE:**

Uconnect offers a complimentary 3-month trial period that includes 1GB of total data. The trial can be activated any time within the first year of new vehicle ownership.

- a. To start, the **Enable Wi-Fi Hotspot** should be un-checked.
- b. Select the **Wi-Fi Hotspot Setup** option from the touchscreen to locate your Hotspot Name and Password. Make note of this information.
- c. Tap the Back Arrow to return to the main Wi-Fi Hotspot page, then check the box to **Enable Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
- d. From your portable device Wi-Fi settings menu, select the Hotspot Name from the list of available networks and enter the provided Password.
- e. Open the web browser on your portable device and enter the following web address: <https://myvehicle.att.com/#/login>.
- f. Create a myVehicle account or log in to your existing one.

g. Select and purchase the desired subscription option. The Wi-Fi Hotspot will activate after a few minutes.

For additional assistance, call AT&T Customer Care at: 866-595-1330.

**NOTE:**

Your vehicle must have a working electrical system for any of the in vehicle SiriusXM Guardian services to operate.

**SiriusXM Guardian Remote Features**

If you own a compatible iPhone or Android powered device, the Uconnect App allows you to remotely lock or unlock your doors, start your engine or activate your horn and lights from virtually anywhere. Your vehicle must be equipped with remote start, must have a SiriusXM Guardian subscription, and must have an operable network connection. Services can only be used where coverage is available. You can download the App from Mopar Owner Connect or from the App Store (iPhone) or Google Play Store (Android). Visit [UconnectPhone.com](https://myvehicle.att.com/#/login) to determine if your device is compatible. For Uconnect Phone customer support and to determine if your device is compatible.

Please visit [UconnectPhone.com](https://myvehicle.att.com/#/login) or for U.S. residents call 1-877-855-8400.

Canadian residents call: 1-800-465-2001 (English) or call:1-800-387-9983 (French).

**Remote Start (If Equipped)** — This feature provides the ability to start the engine on your vehicle, without the keys and from virtually any distance. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of two ways:

1. Using the Uconnect App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.
  - After 15 minutes if you have not entered your vehicle with the key, the engine will shut off automatically.
  - You can also send a command to turn-off an engine that has been remote started.

- This remote function requires your vehicle to be equipped with a factory-installed Remote Start system. To utilize this feature after the Uconnect App is downloaded, login with your user name and password.

You will need your four digit SiriusXM Guardian Security PIN to confirm the request. Press the “remote start” icon on your Uconnect App to remotely start the vehicle.

You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) and click on Edit Profile to manage SiriusXM Guardian Notifications.

**Remote Door Lock/Unlock — If Equipped** — This feature provides the ability to lock or unlock the door on your vehicle, without the keys and from virtually any distance. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of three ways:

1. Using the Uconnect App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.

3. By contacting SiriusXM Guardian Care on the phone.

To use this feature after the Uconnect App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit SiriusXM Guardian Security PIN to confirm the request. Press the “closed lock” icon on your Uconnect App to lock the doors, and press the “open lock” icon to unlock the driver’s door.

You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) and click on Edit Profile to manage SiriusXM Guardian Notifications.

**Remote Horn And Lights — If Equipped** — It’s easy to locate a vehicle in a dark, crowded or noisy parking area by activating the horn and lights. It may also help if you need to draw attention to your vehicle for any reason. You can send a request to your vehicle in one of three ways:

1. Using the Uconnect App from a compatible device.
2. From the Mopar Owner Connect website.

3. By contacting the SiriusXM Guardian Care on the phone.

To use this feature after the Uconnect App is downloaded, login using your user name and password. You will need your four digit SiriusXM Guardian Security PIN to confirm the request. You can set-up notifications for your account to receive an email or text (SMS) message every time a command is sent. Login to Mopar Owner Connect at [mopar.com](http://mopar.com) and click on Edit Profile to manage SiriusXM Guardian Notifications.

### Vehicle Finder—If Equipped

The Vehicle Finder feature of the Uconnect Mobile App allows you to find the location of your vehicle when you can’t remember where it’s parked. You can also sound the alarm and flash the lights to make finding your vehicle even easier.

To find your vehicle:

1. Press the “Location” tab on the Uconnect Mobile App bottom bar.
2. Select the “Vehicle” icon to determine the location of your vehicle.
3. Select the “Find Route” button that appears, once your vehicle is located.



4. Select your preferred Navigation App to route a path to your vehicle.

### Send & Go

The Send & Go feature of the Uconnect Mobile App allows you to search for a destination on your mobile device and then send the route to your vehicle's Uconnect Navigation system.

To send a navigation route to your vehicle:

1. Press the "Location" tab on the Uconnect Mobile App bottom bar.
2. Either type in the destination you would like to navigate to, or search through one of the categories provided.
3. Select the destination you want to route to from the list that appears.
4. Press the "Send To Vehicle" button, and then confirm the destination by pressing "Yes," to send the navigation route to the Uconnect Navigation in your vehicle.
5. Finally, confirm the route inside your vehicle by pressing the "Go Now" option on the pop-up that appears on the touchscreen, when the vehicle is started.

## IPOD/USB/MEDIA PLAYER CONTROL

There are many ways to play music from MP3 players, or USB devices through your vehicle's sound system. Press your Media button on the touchscreen to begin.



**Rear Center Console USB Ports**

- 1 — Mini USB (Type C) Ports
- 2 — Standard USB (Type A) Ports

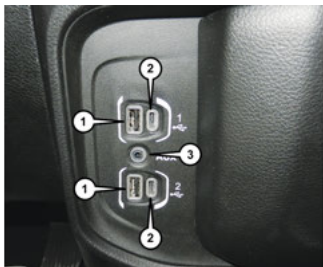


**Center Console USB Port**



**Center Stack USB/AUX Media Hub**

- 1 — Standard USB (Type A) Port #1
- 2 — Mini USB (Type C) Port
- 3 — AUX Port



### Center Console USB/AUX Media Hub

- 1 — Standard USB (Type A) Ports
- 2 — Mini-USB (Type C) Ports
- 3 — AUX Port

### Audio Jack (AUX)

- The AUX allows a device to be plugged into the radio and utilize the vehicle's sound system, using a 3.5 mm audio cable, to amplify the source and play through the vehicle speakers.

- Pressing the “AUX” button on the touch-screen will change the mode to auxiliary device if the audio jack is connected, allowing the music from your device to be heard through the vehicle's speakers. To activate the AUX, plug in the audio jack.

- The functions of the device are controlled using the device buttons. The volume may be controlled using the radio or device.

### USB Port

- Connect your compatible device using a USB cable into the USB Port. USB Memory sticks with audio files can also be used. Audio from the device can be played on the vehicles sound system while providing metadata (artist, track title, album, etc.) information on the radio display.
- When connected, the compatible USB device can be controlled using the radio or Steering Wheel Audio Controls to play,

skip to the next or previous track, browse, and list the contents.

- The battery charges when plugged into the USB port (if supported by the specific device).
- To route the USB cable out of the center console, use the access cut out.

### NOTE:

When connecting your device for the first time, the system may take several minutes to read your music, depending on the number of files. For example, the system will take approximately five minutes for every 1,000 songs loaded on the device. Also during the reading process, the Shuffle and Browse functions will be disabled. This process is needed to ensure the full use of your features and only happens the first time it is connected. After the first time, the reading process of your device will take considerably less time unless changes are made or new songs are added to the playlist.

### Bluetooth Streaming Audio

If using a Bluetooth equipped device you may also be able to stream music to your vehicle's sound system. Your connected device must be Bluetooth compatible and



paired with your system (see Uconnect Phone for pairing instructions). You can access the music from your connected Bluetooth device by pressing the Bluetooth button on the touchscreen while in Media mode.

## NAVIGATION

□ The information in the section below is only applicable if you have the Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display system or the Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display system.

Press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen in the menu bar to access the Navigation system.

### Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt Volume

#### Changing The Navigation Voice Prompt Volume

1. Press the “Settings” button on the touchscreen in the lower right area of the screen.
2. In the Settings menu, press the “Guidance” button on the touchscreen.

3. In the Guidance menu, adjust the Nav Volume by pressing the “+” or “-” buttons on the touchscreen.



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display  
Navigation**

- 1 — Search For A Destination In All Categories
- 2 — Find A Destination
- 3 — View Map
- 4 — Navigate To Saved Home Destination
- 5 — Navigate To Saved Work Destination
- 6 — Navigation Settings
- 7 — Emergency
- 8 — Information



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display  
Navigation**

- 1 — Search For A Destination In All Categories
- 2 — Navigation Settings
- 3 — Information
- 4 — Find A Destination

### Finding Points Of Interest


- From the main Navigation menu, press the “Where To?” button on the touchscreen, then press the “Points of Interest” button on the touchscreen.
- Select a category and then a subcategory, if necessary.
- Select your destination and press the “GO!” button on the touchscreen.

### Finding A Place By Spelling The Name

- From the Main Navigation Menu press the “Where to?” button on the touchscreen, press the “Points of Interest” button on the touchscreen, then press the “Spell Name” button on the touchscreen.
- Enter the name of your destination.
- Press the “List” button on the touchscreen.

- Select your destination and press the “GO!” button on the touchscreen.

### One-Step Voice Destination Entry

- Enter a navigation destination without taking your hands off the wheel.
- Just push the Uconnect Voice Command  button on the steering wheel, wait for the beep and say something like, “**Find Address** 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills MI.”

#### NOTE:

Destination entry is not available while your vehicle is in motion. However, you can also use Voice Commands to enter an address while moving.

#### NOTE:

Refer to “Uconnect Voice Recognition Quick Tips” in this section for further information.



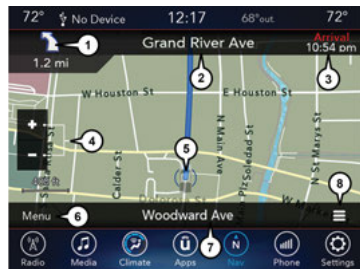
## Setting Your Home Location

- To add a Home location, press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen in the menu bar to access the Navigation system and the Main Navigation menu.
- Press the “Home” button on the touchscreen. You can add a Home location by either selecting “Spell City,” “Spell Street,” or “Select Country.” Select County is automatically filled out based on your state.
- Once you have entered your Home location, select the “Save Home” button located on the lower left-hand side of your touchscreen.

- To delete a saved Home location (or other saved locations), so you can save a new Home location, press the “Nav” button on the touchscreen, and in the “Where To” screen, press “Edit Where To” and then press the “Home” button on the touchscreen. Under the Manage screen press the “Reset Location” button. A confirmation screen will appear asking if you “Are you sure you want to reset this location?” Press “Reset” to confirm the deletion. Set a new Home location by following the previous instructions.

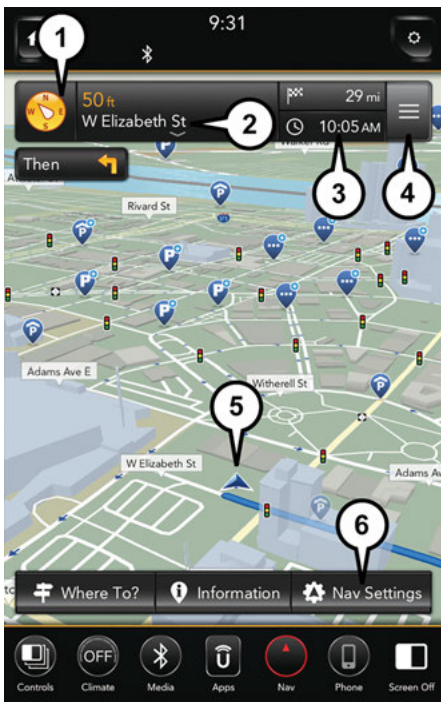
## Home

- A Home location must be saved in the system. From the Main Navigation menu, press the “Home” button on the touchscreen.



Uconnect 4C/4C NAV Map

- 1 — Distance To Next Turn
- 2 — Next Turn Street
- 3 — Estimated Time Of Arrival
- 4 — Zoom In And Out
- 5 — Your Location On The Map
- 6 — Navigation Main Menu
- 7 — Current Street Location
- 8 — Navigation Routing Options



**Uconnect 4C NAV Map**

- 1 — Compass
- 2 — Distance To Next Turn And Next Turn Street
- 3 — Estimated Time Of Arrival
- 4 — Navigation Routing Options
- 5 — Your Location On The Map
- 6 — Navigation Main Menu

Your route is marked with a blue line on the map. If you depart from the original route, your route is recalculated. A speed limit icon could appear as you travel on major roadways.

### Adding A Stop

- To add a stop you must be navigating a route.
- Press the “Menu” button on the touchscreen to return to the Main Navigation menu.
- Press the “Where To?” button on the touchscreen, then search for the extra stop. When another location has been selected, you can choose to cancel your

previous route, add as the first destination or add as the last destination.

- Press the desired selection and press the “GO!” button on the touchscreen.

### Taking A Detour

- To take a detour you must be navigating a route.
- Press the “Detour” button on the touchscreen.

#### NOTE:

If the route you are currently taking is the only reasonable option, the device may not calculate a detour. For more information, see your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement.



### SiriusXM Traffic Plus (4C NAV With 8.4-inch And 12-inch Display)

#### Don't Drive Through Traffic. Drive Around It.

Avoid congestion before you reach it. By enhancing your vehicle's navigation system with the ability to see detailed traffic information, you can pinpoint traffic incidents, determine average traffic speed and estimate travel time along your route. Since the service is integrated with a vehicle's navigation system, SiriusXM Traffic Plus can help drivers pick the fastest route based on traffic conditions.

- Detailed information on traffic speed, accidents, construction, and road closings.
- Traffic information from multiple sources, including police and emergency services, cameras and road sensors.
- Coast-to-coast delivery of traffic information.
- View conditions for points along your route and beyond. Available in over 130 markets.

### SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV With 8.4-inch And 12-inch Display)

In addition to delivering over 130 channels of the best sports, entertainment, talk, and commercial-free music, SiriusXM offers premium data services that work in conjunction with compatible navigation systems. SiriusXM Travel Link brings a wealth of useful information into your vehicle and right to your fingertips.

- **Fuel Prices** — Check local fuel prices in your area and route to the station of your choice.
- **Movie Listings** — Check local movie theatres and listings in your area and route to the theater of your choice.
- **Sports Scores** — In-game and final scores as well as weekly schedules.
- **Weather** — Check variety of local and national weather information from radar maps to current and 5-day forecast.

SiriusXM Travel Link feature is completely integrated into your vehicle. A few minutes after you start your vehicle, Travel Link information arrives and updates in the background. You can access the information whenever you like, with no waiting.

To access SiriusXM Travel Link, press “Apps” button on the touchscreen, then press the “SiriusXM Travel Link” button on the touchscreen.

#### NOTE:

SiriusXM Travel Link requires a subscription, sold separately after the trial subscription included with your vehicle purchase.

# UCONNECT PHONE

## Uconnect Phone (Bluetooth Hands Free Calling)



Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio Phone Menu

- |                                      |                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1 — Call/Redial/Hold                 | 7 — Uconnect Phone Settings Menu |
| 2 — Mobile Phone Signal Strength     | 8 — Text Messaging               |
| 3 — Currently Paired Mobile Phone    | 9 — Direct Dial Pad              |
| 4 — Mobile Phone Battery Life        | 10 — Recent Call Log             |
| 5 — Mute Microphone                  | 11 — Browse Phone Book           |
| 6 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System | 12 — End Call                    |





**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Phone Menu**

- 1 — Currently Paired Mobile Phone
- 2 — Mobile Phone Signal Strength
- 3 — Do Not Disturb
- 4 — Reply with Text Message
- 5 — Current Phone Contact's Name
- 6 — Conference Call\*
- 7 — Phone Pairing
- 8 — Text Messaging Menu\*\*

- 9 — Direct Dial Pad
- 10 — Contact Menu
- 11 — Recent Call Log
- 12 — Favorite Contacts
- 13 — Mute Microphone
- 14 — Decline Incoming Call
- 15 — Answer/Redial/Hold
- 16 — Mobile Phone Battery Life
- 17 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System

\* — Conference call feature only available on GSM mobile devices

\*\* — Text messaging feature not available on all mobile phones (requires Bluetooth MAP profile)




**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display  
Phone Menu**

- 1 — Current Phone Contact's Name
  - 2 — Conference Call\*
  - 3 — Phone Pairing
  - 4 — Text Messaging Menu\*\*
  - 5 — Direct Dial Pad
  - 6 — Contact Menu
  - 7 — Recent Call Log
  - 8 — Favorite Contacts
  - 9 — Mute Microphone
  - 10 — Transfer To/From Uconnect System
  - 11 — Decline Incoming Call
  - 12 — Answer/Redial/Hold
- \* — Conference call feature only available on GSM mobile devices
- \*\* — Text messaging feature not available on all mobile phones (requires Bluetooth MAP profile)

The Uconnect Phone feature enables you to place and receive hands-free mobile phone calls. Drivers can also place mobile phone calls using their voice or by using the buttons on the touchscreen (see Voice Command section).

The hands-free calling feature is made possible through Bluetooth technology — the global standard that enables different elec-

tronic devices to connect to each other wirelessly.

If the Uconnect Phone Button  exists on your steering wheel, you then have the Uconnect Phone features.

**NOTE:**

- The Uconnect Phone requires a mobile phone equipped with the Bluetooth Hands-Free Profile, Version 1.0 or higher.
- Most mobile phones/devices are compatible with the Uconnect system, however some mobile phones/devices may not be equipped with all of the required features to utilize all of the Uconnect system features.

For Uconnect Customer Care:

- U.S. residents visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) or call 1-877-855-8400
- Canadian residents visit [Uconnect-Phone.com](http://Uconnect-Phone.com) or call 1-800-465-2001 (English) or 1-800-387-9983 (French).



## Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System

Mobile phone pairing is the process of establishing a wireless connection between a cellular phone and the Uconnect system.

### NOTE:

- To use the Uconnect Phone feature, you first must determine if your mobile phone and software are compatible with the Uconnect system. Please visit [Uconnect-Phone.com](http://Uconnect-Phone.com) for complete mobile phone compatibility information.
- Mobile phone pairing is not available while the vehicle is in motion.
- A maximum of ten mobile phones can be paired to the Uconnect system.

## Start Pairing Procedure On The Radio

### Uconnect 3:



### Uconnect 3

1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button.
3. Select “Settings.”
4. Select “Paired Phones.”
5. Select “Add device.”
  - Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.

## Uconnect 4C & 4C NAV:



### Uconnect 4C/4C NAV

1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button in the Menu Bar on the touchscreen.

### NOTE:

A message will pop-up stating, “Go to ‘Pairing’ to add or connect a phone.”

3. Press “Pairing.”
4. Press “Paired Phones and Audio Devices.”
5. Select “Add device.”

**NOTE:**

Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.

Phone pairing can also be accessed by:

1. Press the “Apps” button in the Menu Bar on the touchscreen.
2. Press “Settings”
3. Press “Phone/Bluetooth”
4. Then, proceed to follow the steps from the above procedure.

**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12–inch Display:**

**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12–inch Display**

1. Place the ignition in the ACC or ON position.
2. Press the “Phone” button in the Menu Bar on the touchscreen.
3. Select “Add device.”
  - Uconnect Phone will display an “In progress” screen while the system is connecting.

**Pair Your iPhone:**

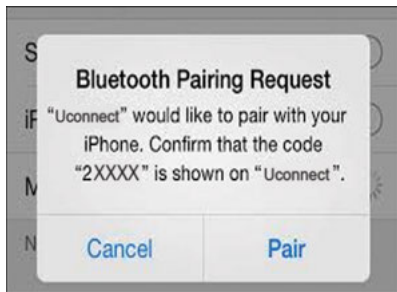
**Bluetooth On/Uconnect Device**



To search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled iPhone:

1. Press the Settings button.
2. Select Bluetooth.
  - Ensure the Bluetooth feature is enabled. Once enabled, the mobile phone will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.
3. When your mobile phone finds the Uconnect system, select "Uconnect".

#### Complete The iPhone Pairing Procedure:



**Pairing Request**

When prompted on the mobile phone, accept the connection request from Uconnect Phone.

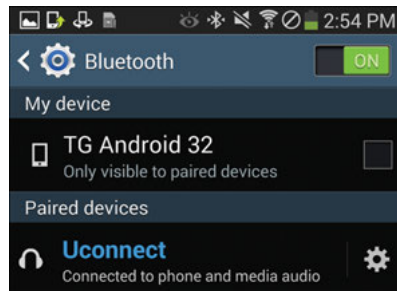
#### NOTE:

Some mobile phones will require you to enter the PIN number.

#### Select The iPhone's Priority Level

When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite mobile phone. Selecting "Yes" will make this mobile phone the highest priority. This mobile phone will take precedence over other paired mobile phones within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one mobile phone and/or one Bluetooth audio device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If "No" is selected, simply select "Uconnect" from the mobile phone/audio device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

#### Pair Your Android Device:



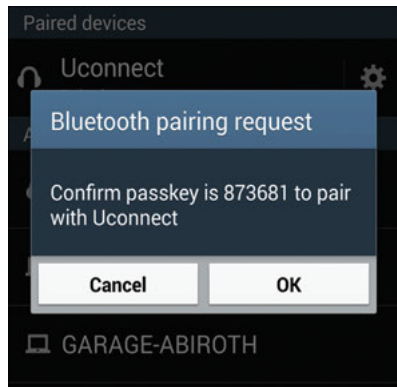
**Uconnect Device**

To search for available devices on your Bluetooth enabled Android Device:

1. Push the Menu button.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Turn Bluetooth setting to "On."
  - Ensure the Bluetooth feature is enabled. Once enabled, the mobile phone will begin to search for Bluetooth connections.

5. Once your mobile phone finds the Uconnect system, select “Uconnect”.
  - You may be prompted by your mobile phone to download the phonebook, check “Do Not Ask Again” to automatically download the phonebook. This is so you can make calls by saying the name of your contact.

### Complete The Android Pairing Procedure:



**Pairing Request**

Confirm the passkey shown on the mobile phone matches the passkey shown on the

Uconnect system then accept the Bluetooth pairing request.

#### **NOTE:**

Some mobile phones require the PIN to be entered manually, enter the PIN number shown on the Uconnect screen.


#### **Select The Android Mobile Phone's Priority Level**

When the pairing process has successfully completed, the system will prompt you to choose whether or not this is your favorite mobile phone. Selecting “Yes” will make this mobile phone the highest priority. This mobile phone will take precedence over other paired mobile phones within range and will connect to the Uconnect system automatically when entering the vehicle. Only one mobile phone and/or one Bluetooth audio device can be connected to the Uconnect system at a time. If “No” is selected, simply select “Uconnect” from the mobile phone/audio device Bluetooth screen, and the Uconnect system will reconnect to the Bluetooth device.

#### **NOTE:**

Software updates, either on your phone or Uconnect system, may interfere with the Bluetooth connection.&nbsp;If this

happens, simply repeat the pairing process.&nbsp;However, first, make sure to delete the device from the list of phones on your Uconnect system.&nbsp;Next, be sure to remove Uconnect from the list of devices in your phone’s Bluetooth settings.

You are now ready to make hands-free calls. Press the Uconnect “Phone” button  on your steering wheel to begin.

#### **NOTE:**

Refer to [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) website for additional information on mobile phone pairing and for a list of compatible phones.

#### **Common Phone Commands (Examples)**

- “Call John Smith”
- “Call John Smith mobile”
- “Dial 1 248 555 1212”
- “Redial”

#### **Mute (Or Unmute) Microphone During Call**

- During a call, press the “Mute” button on the Phone main screen to mute and unmute the call.



## Transfer Ongoing Call Between Handset And Vehicle

- During an on-going call, press the “Transfer” button on the Phone main screen to transfer an on-going call between handset and vehicle.


## Phonebook

The Uconnect system will automatically sync your phonebook from your paired phone, if this feature is supported by your phone. Phonebook contacts are updated each time that the phone is connected. If your phone book entries do not appear, check the settings on your phone. Some phones require you to enable this feature manually.


- Your phonebook can be browsed on the Uconnect system touchscreen, but editing can only be done on your phone. To browse, press the “Phone” button on the touchscreen, then the “Phonebook” button on the touchscreen.

Favorite phonebook entries can be saved as Favorites for quicker access. Favorites are shown at the top of the main phone screen.

## Voice Command Tips

- Speaking complete names (i.e; Call John Doe vs. Call John) will result in greater system accuracy.
- You can “link” commands together for faster results. Say “Call John Doe, mobile,” for example.
- If you are listening to available voice command options, you do not have to listen to the entire list. When you hear the command that you need, push the  button on the steering wheel, wait for the beep and say your command.




## Changing The Volume

- Start a dialogue by pushing the VR button , then say a command. For example, “Help”.
- Use the radio VOLUME/MUTE rotary knob to adjust the volume to a comfortable level while the Uconnect system is speaking.

### NOTE:

The volume setting for Uconnect is different than the audio system.

### NOTE:

To access help, push the Uconnect VR button  (if active) on the steering wheel and say “help.” Push the Uconnect VR Pickup button  (if active) or the VR button  and say “cancel” to cancel the help session.

## Using Do Not Disturb

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience, there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- “I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly.”
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

**NOTE:**

- Only the beginning of your custom message will be seen on the touchscreen.
- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.
- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that supporting Bluetooth MAP.

**Incoming Text Messages**

After pairing your Uconnect system with a Bluetooth enabled mobile device with the Message Access Profile (MAP), the Uconnect system can announce a new incoming text message and read it to you over the vehicle's audio system.

**NOTE:**

Only incoming text messages received during the current ignition cycle can be viewed/read.

**To enable incoming text messaging:**

**iPhone**

1. Press the settings button on the mobile phone.
  - Ensure Bluetooth is enabled, and the mobile phone is paired to the Uconnect system.
2. Select Bluetooth.
  - Select ① located under DEVICES next to Uconnect.
3. Select “Show Notifications” to on.
4. Turn “Show Notifications” to on.

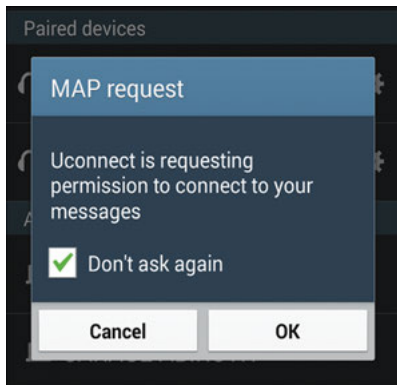


**Enable iPhone Incoming Text Messages**



**Android Devices**

1. Push the Menu button on the mobile phone.
2. Select Settings.
3. Select Connections.
4. Turn “Show Notifications” to on.
  - A pop up will appear asking you to accept a request for permission to connect to your messages. Select “Don’t ask again” and press OK.



**Enable Android Device Incoming Text Messages**

**NOTE:**

All incoming text messages received during the current ignition cycle will be deleted from the Uconnect system when the ignition is turned to the OFF position.

### **Helpful Tips And Common Questions To Improve Bluetooth Performance With Your Uconnect System**

#### **Mobile Phone won't reconnect to system after pairing:**

- Set mobile phone to auto-connect or trusted device in mobile phone Bluetooth settings (Blackberry devices).
- Perform a factory reset on your mobile phone. Refer to your mobile phone manufacturer or cellular provider for instructions.
- Many mobile phones do not automatically reconnect after being restarted (hard reboot). Your mobile phone can still be connected manually. Close all applications that may be operating (refer to mobile phone manufacturer's instructions), and follow “Pairing (Wirelessly Connecting) Your Mobile Phone To The Uconnect System”.

#### **Mobile Phone won't pair to system:**

- Perform a hard reset in the mobile phone by removing the battery (if removable — see your mobile phone's owner manual).
- Delete pairing history in mobile phone and Uconnect system; usually found in phone's Bluetooth connection settings.
- Verify you are selecting “Uconnect” in the discovered Bluetooth devices on your mobile phone.
- If your vehicle system generates a pin code the default is 0000.

#### **Mobile Phonebook didn't download:**

- Check “Do not ask again,” then accept the “phonebook download” request on your mobile phone.
- Up to 5,000 contact names with four numbers per contact will transfer to the Uconnect 4C/4C NAV system phonebook.

#### **Can't make a conference call:**

- CDMA (Code-Division Multiple Access) carriers do not support conference calling. Refer to your mobile phone user's manual for further information.

## Making calls while connected to AUX:

- Plugging in your mobile phone to AUX while connected to Bluetooth will disable Hands-Free Calling. Do not make calls while your mobile phone is plugged into the AUX jack.

## VOICE RECOGNITION QUICK TIPS

### Introducing Uconnect

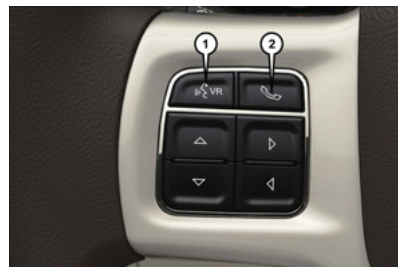
Start using Uconnect Voice Recognition with these helpful quick tips. It provides the key Voice Commands and tips you need to know to control your Uconnect system.

If you see the NAV icon on the bottom bar, or in the Apps menus, of your touchscreen, you have the Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display or the Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display system. If not, you have a Uconnect 4C With 8.4-inch Display system.

## Get Started

All you need to control your Uconnect system with your voice are the buttons on your steering wheel.

1. Visit [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) to check mobile device and feature compatibility and to find phone pairing instructions.
2. Reduce background noise. Wind noise and passenger conversations are examples of noise that may impact recognition.
3. Speak clearly at a normal pace and volume while facing straight ahead. The microphone is located in the headliner and aimed at the driver.
4. Each time you give a Voice Command, you must first push either the VR or Phone button, wait until **after** the beep, then say your Voice Command.
5. You can interrupt the help message or system prompts by pushing the VR or Phone button and saying a Voice Command from current category.




Uconnect Voice Command Buttons

- 1 — Push To Begin Radio Or Media Functions  
2 — Push To Initiate, Answer, End A Phone Call, Or Send/Receive A Text

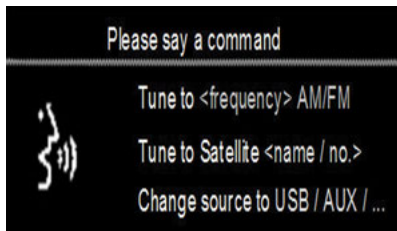
### Basic Voice Commands

The basic Voice Commands below can be given at any point while using your Uconnect system.

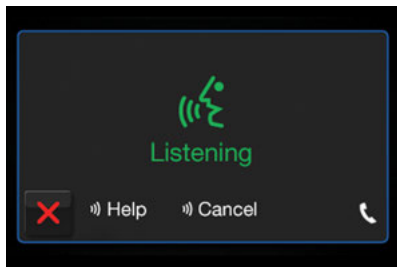
- Push the VR button . After the beep, say:
- **“Cancel”** to stop a current voice session
  - **“Help”** to hear a list of suggested Voice Commands
  - **“Repeat”** to listen to the system prompts again



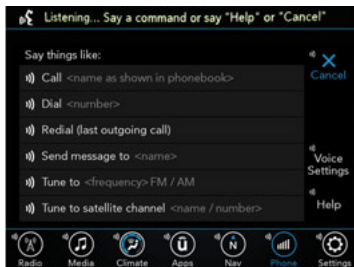
Notice the visual cues that inform you of your voice recognition system's status. Cues appear on the top of the touchscreen.



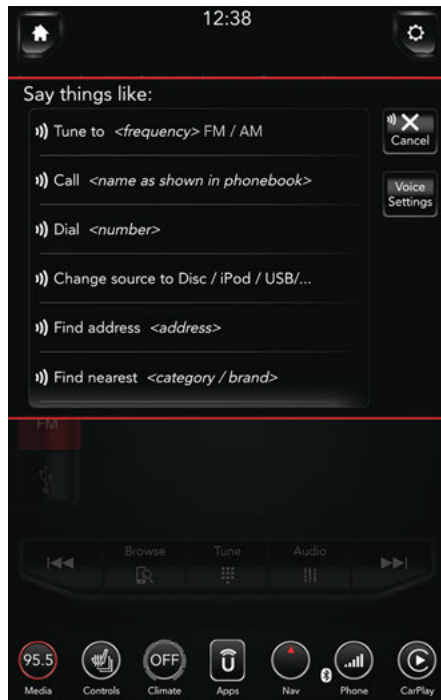
**Uconnect 3.0 Radio Visual Cues**



**Uconnect 3 With 5-inch Display Radio Visual Cues**



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Radio Visual Cues**



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Radio Visual Cues**


## Radio

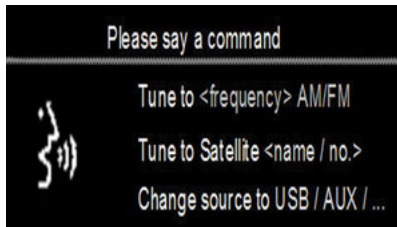
Use your voice to quickly get to the AM, FM or SiriusXM Satellite Radio stations you would like to hear. (Subscription or included SiriusXM Satellite Radio trial required.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say:

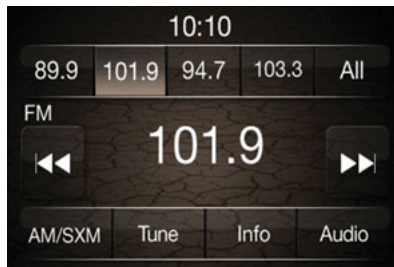
- **“Tune to ninety-five-point-five FM”**
- **“Tune to Satellite Channel Hits 1”**

### TIP:

At any time, if you are not sure of what to say or want to learn a Voice Command, push the VR button  and say **“Help.”** The system provides you with a list of commands.



Uconnect 3.0



Uconnect 3 Radio




Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Radio



Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Radio

## Media

Uconnect offers connections via USB, Bluetooth and auxiliary ports (If Equipped). Voice operation is only available for connected USB and AUX devices. (Remote CD player optional and not available on all vehicles.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands and follow the prompts to switch your media source or choose an artist.

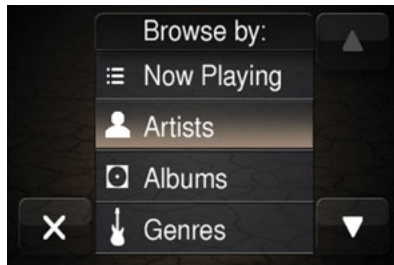
- “**Change source to** Bluetooth”
- “**Change source to** AUX”
- “**Change source to** USB”
- “**Play artist** Beethoven”; “**Play album** Greatest Hits”; “**Play song** Moonlight Sonata”; “**Play genre** Classical”

### TIP:

Press the Browse button on the touchscreen to see all of the music on your USB device. Your Voice Command must match **exactly** how the artist, album, song and genre information is displayed.



Uconnect 3.0 Display Media



Uconnect 3 Media




Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Media



Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Media


## Phone

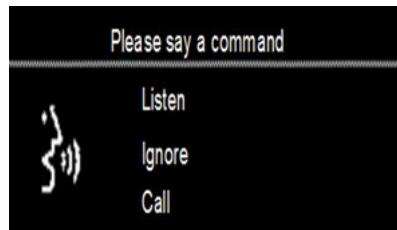
Making and answering hands-free phone calls is easy with Uconnect. When the Phonebook button is illuminated on your touchscreen, your system is ready. Check [UconnectPhone.com](http://UconnectPhone.com) for mobile phone compatibility and pairing instructions.

Push the Phone button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

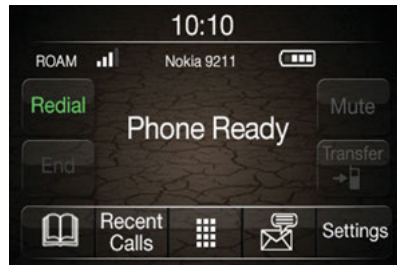
- “**Call** John Smith”
- “**Dial** 123-456-7890 and follow the system prompts”
- “**Redial** (call previous outgoing phone number)”
- “**Call back** (call previous incoming phone number)”

### TIP:

When providing a Voice Command, push the Phone button  and say “**Call**,” then pronounce the name **exactly** as it appears in your phone book. When a contact has multiple phone numbers, you can say “**Call** John Smith **work**.”



Uconnect 3.0 Display Phone

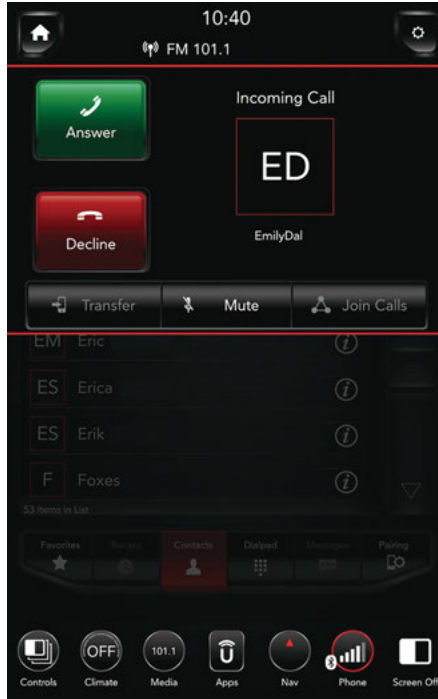


Uconnect 3 Phone









Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Phone



Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Phone

### Voice Text Reply – If Equipped

Uconnect announces **incoming** text messages. Push the VR button  or Phone button  (if enabled) and say “Listen.” (Must have compatible mobile phone paired to Uconnect system.)

1. Once an incoming text message is read to you, push the VR button  or Phone button  (if enabled). After the beep, say: “**Reply.**”
2. Listen to the Uconnect prompts. After the beep, repeat one of the pre-defined messages and follow the system prompts.

PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES		
Yes.	Stuck in traffic.	See you later.
No.	Start without me.	I'll be late.
Okay.	Where are you?	I will be 5 <or 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 45, 60> minutes late.
Call me.	Are you there yet?	

PRE-DEFINED VOICE TEXT REPLY RESPONSES		
I'll call you later.	I need directions.	See you in 5 <or 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 45, 60> minutes.
I'm on my way.	Can't talk right now.	
I'm lost.		Thanks.

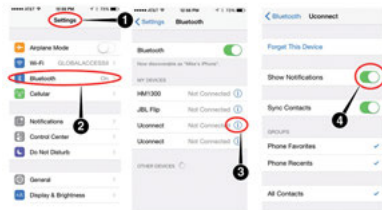
**NOTE:**

Only use the numbering listed, otherwise the system does not transpose the message.

**TIP:**

Your mobile phone must have the full implementation of the **Message Access Profile (MAP)** to take advantage of this feature. For details about MAP, visit [Uconnect-Phone.com](http://Uconnect-Phone.com).

Apple iPhone iOS 6 or later supports reading **incoming** text messages only. To enable this feature on your Apple iPhone, follow these four simple steps:



**iPhone Notification Settings**

- 1 — Select “Settings”
- 2 — Select “Bluetooth”
- 3 — Select The (i) For The Paired Vehicle
- 4 — Turn On “Show Notifications”

**TIP:**

Voice Text Reply is not compatible with iPhone, but if your vehicle is equipped with Siri Eyes Free, you can use your voice to send a text message.

**Climate (4C/4C NAV)**

Too hot? Too cold? Adjust vehicle temperatures hands-free and keep everyone comfortable while you keep moving ahead. (If vehicle is equipped with climate control.)

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

- “Set driver temperature to 70 degrees”
- “Set passenger temperature to 70 degrees”

**TIP:**

Voice Command for Climate may only be used to adjust the interior temperature of your vehicle. Voice Command will not work to adjust the heated seats or steering wheel if equipped.



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display Climate**







Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display  
Climate

## Navigation (4C NAV)

The Uconnect navigation feature helps you save time and become more productive when you know exactly how to get to where you want to go.

1. To enter a destination, push the VR button . After the beep, say: “**Find address** 800 Chrysler Drive Auburn Hills, Michigan.”
2. Then follow the system prompts.

### TIP:

To start a POI search, push the VR button . After the beep, say: “**Find nearest** coffee shop.”



Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display  
Navigation



Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display  
Navigation

## SiriusXM Guardian (4C/4C NAV) – If Equipped



### CAUTION!

Some SiriusXM Guardian services, including SOS Call and Roadside Assistance Call will NOT work without an operable LTE (voice/data) or 3G or 4G (data) network connection compatible with your device.

### NOTE:

Your vehicle may be transmitting data as authorized by the subscriber.

An included trial and/or subscription is required to take advantage of the SiriusXM Guardian services in the next section of this guide. To register with SiriusXM Guardian, press the Apps button on your 8.4-inch or 12-inch touchscreen to get started.

### NOTE:

SiriusXM Guardian is available only on equipped vehicles purchased within the continental United States, Alaska, Hawaii, and Canada. Services can only be used where coverage is available; see coverage map for details.

 SOS Call

 Remote Door Lock/Unlock


 Send & Go

 Vehicle Finder-If Equipped

 Stolen Vehicle Assistance

 Remote Vehicle Start\*\*

 Remote Horn & Lights

 Roadside Assistance Call

Vehicle Health Reports-If Equipped\*\*

Vehicle Health Alert\*\*

Performance Pages Plus\*\*

□ \*\*If vehicle is equipped.

## Register (4C/4C NAV)

To unlock the full potential of SiriusXM Guardian in your vehicle, you must activate your SiriusXM Guardian services.

1. Press the Apps icon on the bottom of your in-vehicle touchscreen.
2. Select the Activate Services icon from your list of apps.
3. Select “Customer Care” to speak with a SiriusXM Guardian Customer Care agent who will activate services in your vehicle, or select “Enter Email” to activate on the web.

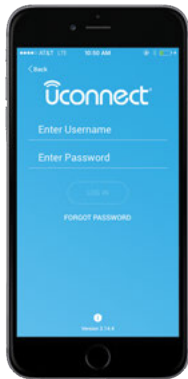
For further information:

- U.S. residents visit: [siriusxm.com/guardian](http://siriusxm.com/guardian)
- Canadian residents visit: [siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://siriusxm.ca/guardian)



## Mobile App (4C/4C NAV)

You're only a few steps away from using remote commands and playing your favorite music in your car.



Mobile App

To use the Uconnect App:


- ❑ Download the Uconnect App to your mobile device.
- ❑ Press the Info button on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app for Vehicle Info.
- ❑ Press the Remote button on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app to Lock/Unlock, Remote Start, and activate your horn and lights remotely.
- ❑ Press the Location button on the navigation bar at the bottom of the app to bring up a map to locate your vehicle or send a location to your vehicle's navigation system.
- ❑ Press the Settings button in the upper left corner of the app to bring up app settings and access the Assist Call Centers.

### NOTE:

For further information please visit [DriveUconnect.com](http://DriveUconnect.com) (U.S. Residents) or [DriveUconnect.ca](http://DriveUconnect.ca) (Canadian Residents).

## SiriusXM Travel Link (4C NAV)

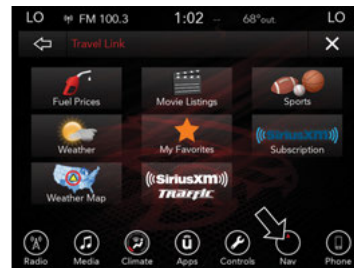
Need to find a gas station, view local movie listings, check a sports score or the 5 - day weather forecast? SiriusXM Travel Link is a suite of services that brings a wealth of information right to your Uconnect 4C NAV system.

Push the VR button . After the beep, say one of the following commands:

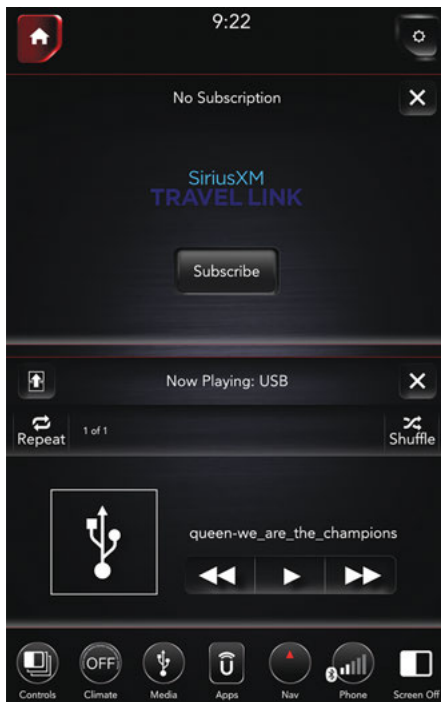
- ❑ "Show fuel prices"
- ❑ "Show 5 - day weather forecast"
- ❑ "Show extended weather"

### TIP:

Traffic alerts are not accessible with Voice Command.



Uconnect 4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display  
SiriusXM Travel Link



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Siri-  
usXM Travel Link**

## Siri Eyes Free – If Equipped

Siri lets you use your voice to send text messages, select media, place phone calls and much more. Siri uses your natural language to understand what you mean and responds back to confirm your requests. The system is designed to keep your eyes on the road and your hands on the wheel by letting Siri help you perform useful tasks.

To enable Siri, push and hold, then release the Uconnect Voice Recognition (VR) button on the steering wheel. After you hear a double beep you can ask Siri to play podcasts and music, get directions, read text messages and many other useful requests.



**Uconnect 4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Siri Eyes  
Free Available**



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Siri Eyes Free  
Available**



## Using Do Not Disturb

With Do Not Disturb, you can disable notifications from incoming calls and texts, allowing you to keep your eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. For your convenience, there is a counter display to keep track of your missed calls and text messages while you were using Do Not Disturb.

Do Not Disturb can automatically reply with a text message, a call, or both, when declining an incoming call and send it to voicemail.

Automatic reply messages can be:

- “I am driving right now, I will get back to you shortly.”
- Create a custom auto reply message up to 160 characters.

While in Do Not Disturb, Conference Call can be selected so you can still place a second call without being interrupted by incoming calls.

### NOTE:

- Only the beginning of your custom message will be seen on the touchscreen.
- Reply with text message is not compatible with iPhones.
- Auto reply with text message is only available on phones that support Bluetooth MAP.

## Android Auto – If Equipped

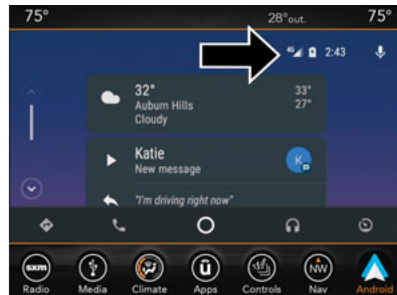
### NOTE:

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Android Auto features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

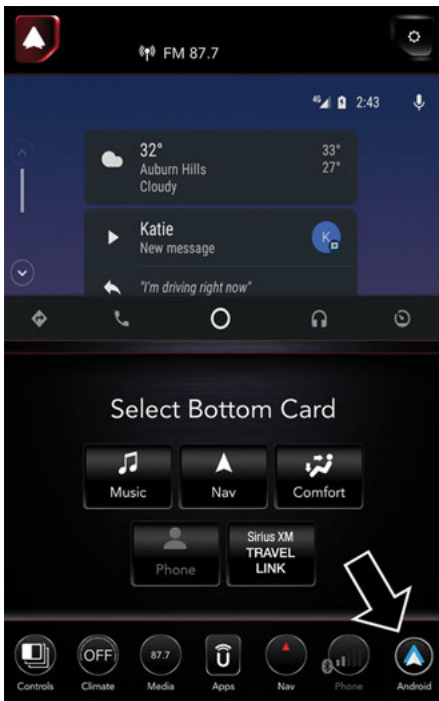
Android Auto allows you to use your voice to interact with Android’s best-in-class speech technology through your vehicle’s voice recognition system, and use your smartphone’s data plan to project your Android powered smartphone and a number of its apps onto your Uconnect touchscreen. Connect your Android 5.0 (Lollipop), or higher, to one of the media USB ports, using the factory-provided USB cable, and press the new Android Auto icon that replaces your “Phone” icon on the main menu bar to begin Android Auto. Push and hold the VR button

on the steering wheel, or press and hold the “Microphone” icon within Android Auto, to activate Android’s VR, which recognizes natural voice commands, to use a list of your smartphone’s features:

- Maps
- Music
- Phone
- Text Messages
- Additional Apps



**Uconnect 4/4C/4C NAV With 8.4-inch Display  
Android Auto**



**Uconnect 4C NAV With 12–inch Display Android Auto**

Refer to your Uconnect Owner’s Manual Supplement for further information.

**NOTE:**

Requires compatible smartphone running Android 5.0 Lollipop or higher and download app on Google Play. Android, Android Auto, and Google Play are trademarks of Google Inc.

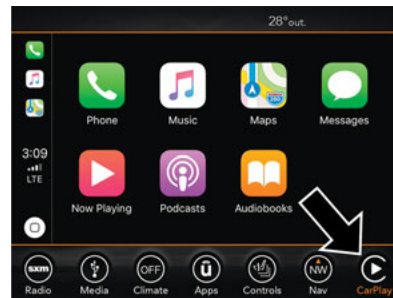
**Apple CarPlay – If Equipped**

**NOTE:**

Feature availability depends on your carrier and mobile phone manufacturer. Some Apple CarPlay features may or may not be available in every region and/or language.

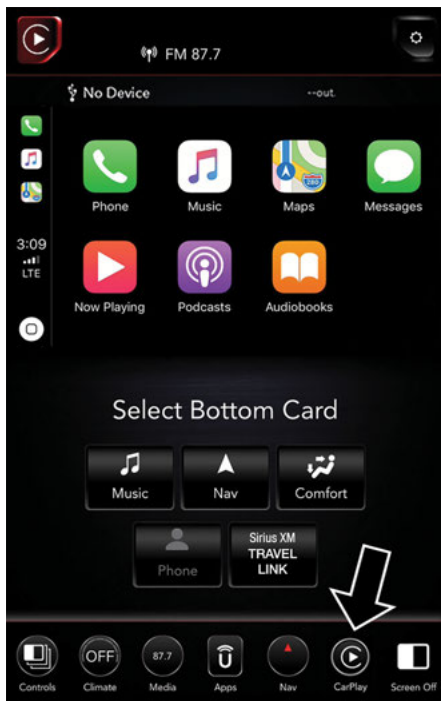
Apple CarPlay allows you to use your voice to interact with Siri through your vehicle’s voice recognition system, and use your smartphone’s data plan to project your iPhone and a number of its apps onto your Uconnect touchscreen. Connect your iPhone 5, or higher, to one of the media USB ports, using the factory-provided Lightning cable, and press the new CarPlay icon that replaces your “Phone” icon on the main menu bar to begin Apple CarPlay. Press and hold the VR button on the steering wheel, or press and hold the “Home” button within Apple CarPlay, to activate Siri, which recognizes natural voice commands to use a list of your iPhone’s features:

- Phone
- Music
- Messages
- Maps
- Additional Apps



**Uconnect 4/4C/4C NAV With 8.4–inch Display Apple CarPlay**





### Uconnect 4C NAV With 12-inch Display Apple CarPlay

Refer to your Uconnect Owner's Manual Supplement for further information.

#### NOTE:

Requires compatible iPhone. See dealer for phone compatibility. Data plan rates apply. Vehicle user interface is a product of Apple. Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc. iPhone is a trademark of Apple Inc., registered in the US and other countries. Apple terms of use and privacy statements apply.

#### General Information

The following regulatory statement applies to all Radio Frequency (RF) devices equipped in this vehicle:

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with Industry Canada license-exempt RSS standard(s). Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause harmful interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

#### NOTE:

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

#### Additional Information

© 2019 FCA US LLC. All rights reserved. Mopar and Uconnect are registered trademarks and Mopar Owner Connect is a trademark of FCA US LLC. Android is a trademark of Google Inc. SiriusXM and all related marks and logos are trademarks of SiriusXM Radio Inc.

Uconnect System Support:

- U.S. residents visit [www.DriveUconnect.com](http://www.DriveUconnect.com) or call: 1-877-855-8400(24 hours a day 7 days a week)
- Canadian residents visit [www.DriveUconnect.ca](http://www.DriveUconnect.ca) or call: 1-800-465-2001(English) or 1-800-387-9983(French)

SiriusXM Guardian services support:

- U.S. residents visit [www.siriusxm.com/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.com/guardian) or call: 1-844-796-4827
- Canadian residents visit [www.siriusxm.ca/guardian](http://www.siriusxm.ca/guardian) or call: 1-877-324-9091

## IF YOU NEED ASSISTANCE

The manufacturer and its authorized dealer are vitally interested in your satisfaction. We want you to be happy with our products and services.

Warranty service must be done by an authorized dealer. We strongly recommend that you take the vehicle to an authorized dealer. They know your vehicle the best, and are most concerned that you get prompt and high quality service. The manufacturer's authorized dealer have the facilities, factory-trained technicians, special tools, and the latest information to ensure the vehicle is fixed correctly and in a timely manner.

This is why you should always talk to an authorized dealer service manager first. Most matters can be resolved with this process.

- If for some reason you are still not satisfied, talk to the general manager or owner of the authorized dealer. They want to know if you need assistance.
- If an authorized dealer is unable to resolve the concern, you may contact the manufacturer's customer center.

Any communication to the manufacturer's customer center should include the following information:

- Owner's name and address
- Owner's telephone number (home and office)
- Authorized dealer name
- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Vehicle delivery date and mileage

### **FCA US LLC Customer Center**

P.O. Box 21-8004

Auburn Hills, MI 48321-8004

Phone: (866) 726-4636

### **FCA Canada Inc. Customer Center**

P.O. Box 1621

Windsor, Ontario N9A 4H6

Phone: (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French

### **In Mexico Contact**

Av. Prolongacion Paseo de la Reforma, 1240  
Sante Fe C.P. 05109

Mexico, D. F.

In Mexico City: 800-505-1300

Outside Mexico City: +(52)55 50817568

### **Puerto Rico And U.S. Virgin Islands**

FCA Caribbean LLC

P.O. Box 191857

San Juan 00919-1857

Phone: (866) 726-4636

Fax: (787) 782-3345

### **Customer Assistance For The Hearing Or Speech Impaired (TDD/TTY)**

To assist customers who have hearing difficulties, the manufacturer has installed special TDD (Telecommunication Devices for the Deaf) equipment at its customer center. Any hearing or speech impaired customer, who has access to a TDD or a conventional teletypewriter (TTY) in the United States, can communicate with the manufacturer by dialing 1-800-380-CHRY.

Canadian residents with hearing difficulties that require assistance can use the special needs relay service offered by Bell Canada.



For TTY teletypewriter users, dial 711 and for Voice callers, dial 1-800-855-0511 to connect with a Bell Relay Service operator.

### Service Contract

You may have purchased a service contract for a vehicle to help protect you from the high cost of unexpected repairs after the manufacturer's New Vehicle Limited Warranty expires. The manufacturer stands behind only the manufacturer's service contracts. If you purchased a manufacturer's service contract, you will receive Plan Provisions and an Owner Identification Card in the mail within three weeks of the vehicle delivery date. If you have any questions about the service contract, call the manufacturer's Service Contract National Customer Hotline at 1-800-521-9922 (Canadian residents, call (800) 465-2001 English / (800) 387-9983 French).

The manufacturer will not stand behind any service contract that is not the manufacturer's service contract. It is not responsible for any service contract other than the manufacturer's service contract. If you purchased a service contract that is not a manufacturer's service contract, and you require service after the manufacturer's New Vehicle

Limited Warranty expires, please refer to the contract documents, and contact the person listed in those documents.

We appreciate that you have made a major investment when you purchased the vehicle. An authorized dealer has also made a major investment in facilities, tools, and training to assure that you are absolutely delighted with the ownership experience. You will be pleased with their sincere efforts to resolve any warranty issues or related concerns.



### WARNING!

Engine exhaust (internal combustion engines only), some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain, or emit, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects, or other reproductive harm.

## REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS

### In The 50 United States And Washington, D.C.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash or cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying FCA US LLC.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, an authorized dealer or FCA US LLC.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); or go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Admin-

istrator, NHTSA, 1200 New Jersey Avenue, SE., West Building, Washington, D.C. 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

### In Canada

If you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should contact the Customer Service Department immediately. Canadian customers who wish to report a safety defect to the Canadian government should contact Transport Canada, Motor Vehicle Defect Investigations and Recalls at 1-800-333-0510 or go to <http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/>.

## PUBLICATION ORDER FORMS

- You can purchase a copy of the Owner's Manual, United States customers may visit the Ram Truck Contact Us page at [www.ramtrucks.com](http://www.ramtrucks.com) scroll to the bottom of the page and select the "Contact Us" link, then select the "Owner's Manual and Glove Compartment Material" from the left menu. You can also purchase a copy by calling 1-866-726-4636 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-1143 (Canada).
- Replacement User Guide kits or, if you prefer, additional printed copies of the Owner's Manual, may be purchased by visiting [www.techauthority.com](http://www.techauthority.com) (U.S.) or by calling 1-800-890-4038 (U.S.) or 1-800-387-1143 (Canada).

### NOTE:

- The Owner's Manual and User Guide electronic files are also available on the Chrysler, Jeep, Ram Truck, Dodge and SRT websites.
- Click on the "Owners" tab, select "Owner And Service Manuals". Then select your desired model year and vehicle from the drop down lists.



# Index

- A**
- Accessories .....239
    - Mopar .....239
  - Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Cruise Control) .....141
  - Adding Fuel.....156, 157
  - Additives, Fuel.....156
  - Adjustable Pedals .....26
  - Air Bag
    - Air Bag Operation .....93
    - Air Bag Warning Light.....90
    - Enhanced Accident Response.....98, 193
    - Event Data Recorder (EDR).....193
    - If Deployment Occurs.....97
    - Knee Impact Bolsters.....94
    - Maintaining Your Air Bag System.....99
    - Maintenance.....99
    - Transporting Pets.....118
  - Air Bag Light.....61, 90, 119
  - Air Cleaner, Engine (Engine Air Cleaner Filter) .....208
  - Air Conditioning .....42
  - Air Conditioning Filter .....44
  - Air Conditioning System.....42
  - Air Conditioning, Operating Tips.....43
  - Air Filter .....208
  - Air Pressure
    - Tires.....220
  - Alarm
    - Security Alarm .....15, 62
  - Android Auto .....252, 298
  - Apps .....257
  - Communication.....256
  - Maps.....254
  - Music.....255
- Antifreeze (Engine Coolant)  
Capacities .....231, 232
- Anti-Lock Warning Light.....66
- Apple CarPlay .....257, 299
- Apps .....261
  - Maps.....260
  - Messages .....259
  - Music.....259
  - Phone .....258
- Audio Systems (Radio).....245
- Auto Down Power Windows .....44
- Auto Unlock, Doors.....136
- Automatic Headlights.....31
- Automatic Temperature Control (ATC).....42
- Automatic Transmission .....135
- Fluid Type.....235, 238
  - Shifting.....133
- Automatic Transmission Limp Home Mode.....136
- AUX Cord.....270
- Auxiliary Driving Systems.....70
- Axle Fluid .....235, 238
- B**
- Back-Up.....150
  - Back-Up Camera .....150
  - Battery .....62
    - Charging System Light .....62
  - Belts, Seat.....119
    - Body Builders Guide.....2
  - B-Pillar Location.....217
  - Brake Fluid.....235
  - Brake System
    - Warning Light .....61
  - Brake/Transmission Interlock .....133
  - Bulb Replacement .....171
  - Bulbs, Light.....121, 171
- C**
- Camera.....150
  - Camera, Rear .....150, 153
  - Capacities, Antifreeze (Engine Coolant).....231, 232
  - Capacities, Fluid.....231, 232

Caps, Filler			
Oil (Engine).....	206		
Carbon Monoxide Warning .....	118		
Cargo Light.....	32		
Changing A Flat Tire.....	181		
Chart, Tire Sizing .....	214		
Checking Your Vehicle For Safety.....	118		
Checks, Safety.....	118		
Child Restraint .....	100		
Child Restraints			
Booster Seats .....	102		
Child Seat Installation .....	111, 113		
How To Stow An unused ALR			
Seat Belt.....	110		
Infant And Child Restraints.....	101		
Locating The LATCH Anchorages .....	108		
Lower Anchors And Tethers			
For Children.....	104		
Older Children And Child Restraints...	102		
Seating Positions .....	103		
Cleaning			
Wheels.....	227		
Climate Control.....	35		
Automatic.....	35		
Clock Settings.....	245		
Compact Spare Tire .....	225		
Contract, Service.....	302		
Cooling System			
Cooling Capacity .....	231, 232		
Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze)....	233, 236		
Cruise Control (Speed Control) .....	140, 141		
Cruise Light .....	69		
Customer Assistance .....	301		
Cybersecurity.....	240		
<b>D</b>			
Daytime Running Lights .....	29		
Dealer Service .....	208		
Defroster, Windshield.....	119		
Delay (Intermittent) Wipers.....	32		
Diesel Fuel System, Re-Priming.....	211		
Disabled Vehicle Towing.....	191		
Do Not Disturb .....	284, 298		
Door Ajar .....	63		
Door Ajar Light.....	63		
Doors .....	16		
Draining Fuel/Water Separator Filter .....	209		
Driver's Seat Back Tilt .....	19		
Driving			
Through Flowing, Rising, Or			
Shallow Standing Water .....	169		
Dual Rear Wheels .....	184, 230		
<b>E</b>			
Electrical Power Outlets .....	51		
Electronic Range Select (ERS).....	135, 137		
Electronic Throttle Control			
Warning Light.....	62		
Electronically Shifted Transfer			
Case.....	138, 139		
Emergency, In Case Of			
Freeing Vehicle When Stuck.....	190		
Hazard Warning Flasher .....	171		
Jacking .....	181		
Jump Starting.....	185		
Engine.....	206, 207		
Air Cleaner .....	208		
Block Heater .....	128		
Break-In Recommendations .....	131		
Compartment.....	207		
Compartment Identification .....	206		
Coolant (Antifreeze).....	233, 236		
Exhaust Gas Caution.....	118		
Identification .....	207		
Idling.....	128		
Jump Starting.....	185		
Oil.....	233, 236		
Oil Filler Cap.....	206		
Oil Reset.....	56		
Overheating.....	187		
Starting.....	122		
Enhanced Accident Response			
Feature.....	98, 193		
Exhaust Gas Cautions .....	118		
Exhaust System .....	118		
Exterior Lighting.....	29		
Exterior Lights.....	29, 121		



- F**
- Filters
    - Air Conditioning .....44
    - Engine Fuel.....209, 233
    - Engine Oil .....233, 236
  - Flashers
    - Turn Signals .....32, 68, 121
  - Flash-To-Pass .....30
  - Flat Tire Changing.....181, 213, 225
  - Flat Tire Stowage .....184, 213, 225
  - Fluid Capacities .....231, 232
  - Fluid Leaks .....121
  - Fluids And Lubricants .....233, 236
  - Fog Lights .....31
  - Fold-Flat Seats .....19
  - Forward Collision Warning .....70
  - Four Wheel Drive.....137
  - Four-Way Hazard Flasher.....171
  - Freeing A Stuck Vehicle.....190
  - Fuel .....157
    - Adding.....156
    - Additives .....156
    - Capacity .....232
    - Diesel.....157, 236
    - Filter .....209, 233
    - Light .....64
    - Materials Added.....156
    - Tank Capacity.....231
  - Fuses.....173
- G**
- Garage Door Opener (HomeLink).....47
  - Gauges
    - Voltage .....128
  - Gear Selector Override .....188
  - General Information .....80, 262
  - Guide
    - Body Builders.....2
- H**
- Hazard
    - Driving Through Flowing, Rising, Or Shallow Standing Water .....169
  - Hazard Warning Flashers.....171
  - Head Restraints .....23
  - Head Rests .....23
  - Headlights
    - Automatic High Beam.....30
    - High Beam.....30
    - Passing.....30
    - Switch .....29
  - Hoisting.....212
  - HomeLink (Garage Door Opener).....47
  - Hood Prop .....46
  - Hood Release .....46
  - Hub Caps .....184
- I**
- Idle-Up Feature.....129
- Ignition**.....12
- Switch.....12
- Instrument Cluster**
- Descriptions .....68
  - Display.....55
  - Engine Oil Reset .....56
- Integrated Trailer Brake Control**.....162
- Intermittent Wipers (Delay Wipers)**.....32
- Intervention Regeneration Strategy** .....57
- Introduction**.....1
- Inverter Outlet (115V)** .....52
- iPod/USB/MP3 Control** .....270
- J**
- Jack Location .....181
  - Jack Operation .....181
  - Jacking And Tire Changing .....181
  - Jump Starting .....185
- K**
- Keyless Enter-N-Go .....16, 125
    - Passive Entry .....16
  - Keys.....11
- L**
- Lane Change And Turn Signals .....32
  - Latches .....121
    - Hood .....46
  - Leaks, Fluid.....121
  - Life Of Tires .....223

Light Bulbs .....	121, 171	Low Tire Pressure System .....	72	Oil, Engine.....	233, 236
Lights.....	121	Lug Nuts/Bolts .....	184, 230	Capacity.....	231, 232
Air Bag.....	61, 90, 119			Filter .....	233, 236
Automatic High Beam .....	30	<b>M</b>		Pressure Warning Light .....	62
Brake Warning.....	61	Maintenance Plan.....	200	Operator Manual	
Bulb Replacement.....	171	Maintenance Schedule .....	194, 198, 200	Owner's Manual .....	303
Cargo.....	32	Malfunction Indicator Light		Overheating, Engine.....	187
Cruise .....	69	(Check Engine).....	63		
Daytime Running .....	29	Manual		<b>P</b>	
Electronic Stability Program(ESP)		Park Release .....	189	ParkSense System, Rear .....	146, 149
Indicator.....	62	Service .....	303	Passive Entry.....	16
Engine Temperature Warning.....	62	Media Hub.....	270	Pedals, Adjustable .....	26
Exterior.....	29, 121	Memory Seat .....	19	Perform Service Indicator, Reset .....	199
Hazard Warning Flasher.....	171	Mirrors.....	27	Pets .....	118
Headlights.....	29, 31	Memory .....	19	Phone (Uconnect) .....	277
High Beam.....	30	Monitor, Tire Pressure System.....	72	Pairing .....	280
Low Fuel.....	64	Mopar Accessories.....	239	Placard, Tire And Loading Information ..	217
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine)..	63	Multi-Function Control Lever .....	29	Power	
Park.....	68			Distribution Center (Fuses).....	173
Passing.....	30	<b>N</b>		Outlet (Auxiliary Electrical Outlet)..	51, 52
Seat Belt Reminder .....	60	Navigation.....	272	Sliding Rear Window .....	45
Security Alarm.....	62	Navigation System (Uconnect GPS).....	150	Windows .....	44
Service.....	171	New Vehicle Break-In Period .....	131	Power Steering Fluid.....	235
Turn Signals .....	32, 68, 121			Pregnant Women And Seat Belts.....	88
Warning Instrument Cluster		<b>O</b>		Preparation For Jacking.....	181
Descriptions.....	62, 68	Occupant Restraints.....	80		
Loading Vehicle		Oil Change Indicator .....	199	<b>R</b>	
Tires.....	217	Oil Pressure Light .....	62	Radial Ply Tires.....	221
Locks		Oil Reset .....	56	Radio	
Child Protection .....	18			Presets.....	242, 245, 251



Radio Frequency		Schedule, Maintenance .....	194	Selection Of Coolant (Antifreeze)....	233, 236
General Information.....	12, 15, 18	Seat Belt		Service Assistance.....	301
Radio Operation .....	244, 248	Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) .....	89	Service Contract .....	302
Radio Screens.....	248	Seat Belt Reminder .....	60	Service Manuals .....	303
Rain Sensitive Wiper System .....	33	Seat Belts .....	81, 119	Shift Lever Override .....	188
Rear Camera .....	153	Adjustable Shoulder Belt .....	85	Shifting.....	132
Rear ParkSense System .....	146, 149	Adjustable Upper Shoulder		Automatic Transmission.....	133, 135
Rear Window, Sliding.....	45	Anchorage.....	85	Transfer Case, Shifting Into	
Recreational Towing .....	165	Adjustable Upper Shoulder		Transfer Case Neutral (N).....	166
Shifting Into Transfer Case		Belt Anchorage .....	85	Transfer Case, Shifting Out	
Neutral (N) .....	166	Child Restraints .....	100	Of Transfer Case Neutral (N).....	168
Shifting Out Of Transfer Case		Extender.....	87	Signals, Turn.....	32, 68, 121
Neutral (N) .....	168	Front Seat.....	81, 83	Siri.....	297
Release, Hood .....	46	Inspection.....	119	Sirius Satellite Radio	
Reminder, Seat Belt .....	81	Lap/Shoulder Belt Operation .....	83	Traffic & Weather .....	276
Remote Keyless Entry.....	11	Lap/Shoulder Belt Untwisting.....	84	Sirius Travel Link .....	276
Replacement Bulbs .....	171	Operating Instructions .....	83	SiriusXM Guardian .....	263
Replacement Tires .....	223	Pregnant Women .....	88	Account .....	263
Reporting Safety Defects .....	302	Reminder .....	81	App.....	264
Resetting Perform Service Indicator .....	199	Seat Belt Extender .....	87	In Vehicle Features.....	265
Restraints, Child .....	100	Seat Belt Reminder.....	81	Maintaining Your Account .....	265
Restraints, Head .....	23	Untwisting Procedure.....	84	Registration.....	264
<b>S</b>		Seats.....	19	Remote Features .....	268
Safety Checks Inside Vehicle .....	119	Adjustment.....	19	Renewing Subscriptions.....	265
Safety Checks Outside Vehicle.....	121	Easy Entry.....	21	Send & Go.....	270
Safety Defects, Reporting .....	302	Head Restraints .....	23	Vehicle Finder.....	269
Safety Information, Tire .....	213	Memory .....	19	Sliding Rear Window, Power.....	45
Safety Tips .....	118	Rear Folding.....	19	Snow Tires.....	224
Safety, Exhaust Gas.....	118	Tilting.....	19	Spare Tire Changing.....	181
		Security Alarm.....	15, 62	Spare Tire Stowage .....	184

Spare Tires.....	225, 226
Spark Plugs.....	233
Speed Control	
Cancel.....	141
Resume .....	141
Speed Control (Cruise Control).....	140, 141
Starting.....	122, 125
Button.....	12
Engine Block Heater.....	128
Starting And Operating.....	122
Starting Procedures .....	122, 125
Starting Procedures (Diesel Engines).....	125
Starting Procedures (Gas Engines).....	122
Steering	
Tilt Column.....	25
Wheel, Heated.....	25
Wheel, Tilt .....	25
Steering Wheel Audio Controls.....	262
Steering Wheel Mounted Sound System Controls .....	262
Storage, Vehicle .....	43
<b>T</b>	
Telescoping Steering Column.....	25
Temperature Control, Automatic (ATC)....	42
Text Messages .....	247, 285
Tilt Steering Column.....	25
Tips .....	262
Tire And Loading Information Placard....	217
Tire Markings.....	213

Tire Safety Information .....	213
Tire Stowage.....	184
Tires.....	121, 220, 225, 228
Aging (Life Of Tires).....	223
Air Pressure.....	220
Changing.....	181
Compact Spare .....	225
Dual .....	184, 230
General Information .....	220, 225
High Speed.....	221
Inflation Pressure .....	220
Jacking.....	181
Life Of Tires .....	223
Load Capacity .....	217
Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS).....	65, 72
Quality Grading.....	228
Radial.....	221
Replacement.....	223
Safety .....	213, 220
Sizes.....	214
Snow Tires.....	224
Spare Tires .....	225, 226
Spinning .....	222
Tread Wear Indicators.....	222
Wheel Nut Torque .....	230
To Open Hood .....	46

Towing.....	160, 191
Disabled Vehicle.....	191
Guide .....	160
Recreational.....	165
Weight.....	160
Towing Behind A Motorhome.....	165
Traction.....	169
Trailer Towing .....	160
Minimum Requirements .....	160
Trailer Towing Guide.....	160
Trailer Weight.....	160
Transfer Case	
Electronically Shifted .....	138, 139
Fluid.....	235, 238
Transmission.....	135
Automatic.....	133, 135
Fluid.....	235, 238
Shifting.....	132
Transporting Pets .....	118
Tread Wear Indicators.....	222
Turn Signals.....	32, 68
<b>U</b>	
Uconnect	
Uconnect Settings .....	261
Uconnect 3 With 5-Inch Display.....	244
Uconnect 3.0.....	241
Uconnect 4C Nav With 12-Inch Display	248
Uconnect Phone.....	277
Making A Call .....	284



Uconnect Settings			
Customer Programmable Features	16, 261		
Passive Entry Programming	.....16		
Uconnect Voice Command	.....287		
Uniform Tire Quality Grades	.....228		
Universal Garage Door Opener (HomeLink)	.....47		
Universal Transmitter	.....47		
Untwisting Procedure, Seat Belt	.....84		
USB	.....270		
<b>V</b>			
Vehicle Loading	.....217		
Vehicle Storage	.....43		
Voice Command	.....283, 284		
Voice Recognition System (VR)	.....283, 284, 287		
Voltmeter	.....128		
<b>W</b>			
Warning Lights (Instrument Cluster Descriptions)	.....64		
Washers, Windshield	.....32		
Water			
Driving Through	.....169		
Water Separator			
Diesel Fuel	.....209		
Wheel And Wheel Tire Care	.....227		
Wheel And Wheel Tire Trim	.....227		
Wheel Covers	.....184		
Wind Buffeting	.....45		
Window Fogging	.....43		
Windows	.....44		
Power	.....44		
Rear Sliding	.....45		
Windshield Defroster	.....119		
Windshield Washers	.....32		
Fluid	.....32		
Windshield Wipers	.....32		
Wipers, Intermittent	.....32		
Wipers, Rain Sensitive	.....33		
Wireless Charging Pad	.....53		

The driver's primary responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, resulting in an accident and personal injury. FCA US LLC strongly recommends that the driver use extreme caution when using any device or feature that may take their attention off the road. Use of any electrical devices, such as cellular telephones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices, by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous and could lead to a serious accident. Texting while driving is also dangerous and should never be done while the vehicle is moving. If you find yourself unable to devote your full attention to vehicle operation, pull off the road to a safe location and stop your vehicle. Some states or provinces prohibit the use of cellular telephones or texting while driving. It is always the driver's responsibility to comply with all local laws.

This guide has been prepared to help you get quickly acquainted with your new Ram brand vehicle and to provide a convenient reference for common questions. However, it is not a substitute for your Owner's Manual.

For complete operational instructions, maintenance procedures and important safety messages, please consult your Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals found on the website on the back cover and other Warning Labels in your vehicle.

Not all features shown in this guide may apply to your vehicle. For additional information on accessories to help personalize your vehicle, visit [www.mopar.com](http://www.mopar.com) (U.S.), [www.mopar.ca](http://www.mopar.ca) (Canada) or your local Ram brand dealer.

## DRIVING AND ALCOHOL

Drunk driving is one of the most frequent causes of accidents. Your driving ability can be seriously impaired with blood alcohol levels far below the legal minimum. If you are drinking, don't drive. Ride with a designated non-drinking driver, call a cab, a friend or use public transportation.

## WARNING

Driving after drinking can lead to an accident. Your perceptions are less sharp, your reflexes are slower and your judgment is impaired when you have been drinking. Never drink and then drive.



**WHETHER IT'S PROVIDING** information about specific product features, taking a tour through your vehicle's heritage, knowing what steps to take following an accident or scheduling your next appointment, we know you'll find the app an important extension of your Ram vehicle.

**SIMPLY DOWNLOAD** the app, select your make and model and enjoy the ride. To get this app, go directly to the App Store® or Google Play® Store and enter the search keyword "ram toolbox" (U.S. residents only).

**WWW.RAMTRUCKS.COM/EN/OWNERS** (U.S.) provides special offers tailored to your needs, customized vehicle galleries, personalized service records and more. To get this information, just create an account and check back often.

**GET WARRANTY AND OTHER INFORMATION ONLINE** – you can review and print or download a copy of the Owner's Manual, Navigation/Uconnect manuals and the limited warranties provided by FCA US LLC for your vehicle by visiting **WWW.MOPAR.COM** (U.S.) or **WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA** (Canada). Click on the applicable link in the "Popular Topics" area of the **WWW.MOPAR.COM** (U.S.) or **WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA** (Canada) homepage and follow the instructions to select the applicable year, make and model of your vehicle.



**DOWNLOAD A FREE  
ELECTRONIC COPY OF THE  
MOST UP-TO-DATE OWNER'S  
MANUAL, MEDIA AND  
WARRANTY BOOKLET  
BY VISITING:**

**WWW.MOPAR.COM/EN-US/CARE/  
OWNERS-MANUAL.HTML  
(U.S. RESIDENTS);**

**WWW.OWNERS.MOPAR.CA  
(CANADIAN RESIDENTS).**

**RAMTRUCKS.COM (U.S.)  
RAMTRUCK.CA (CANADA)**

©2019 FCA US LLC. All Rights Reserved. Tous droits réservés. Ram is a registered trademark of FCA US LLC. Ram est une marque déposée de FCA US LLC. App Store is a registered trademark of Apple Inc. Google Play Store is a registered trademark of Google.



19DD-926-AA  
SECOND EDITION